

This book belongs to
THE CAMPBELL COLLECTION
purchased with the aid of
The MacDonald-Stewart Foundation
and
The Canada Council



CAMPBELL
COLLECTION



THE POEMS
OF
LAURENCE MINOT

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK
TORONTO MELBOURNE BOMBAY
HUMPHREY MILFORD M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY

THE POEMS
OF
LAURENCE MINOT

EDITED

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

BY

JOSEPH HALL, M.A.

HON. D.LITT., DURHAM UNIVERSITY

‘pe dedes of þer hondes þorgh reames er ronnen’

THIRD EDITION

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1914

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	vii
POEMS	I
NOTES	37
APPENDIX	101
NOTES ON APPENDIX	123
GLOSSARY	130
INDEX OF NAMES	153
WORDS EXPLAINED IN THE NOTES	155



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

INTRODUCTION

THE Poems of Laurence Minot have been preserved in a single Manuscript of the Cottonian Collection, Galba, E. ix. It is a large parchment folio, written in two columns to the page. The following is a table of its contents :—

- f. 1 a. Blank. On the verso is written *Chaucer, Exemplar emendate scriptum*, an inscription which led Tyrwhitt to look into the MS. and discover these poems (Ritson's Minot, pp. vii, viii).
- f. 2. A leaf inserted from a book of Hours, probably when the book was bound for Sir Robert Cotton.
- f. 3 a. Seven lines of the poem on the siege of Calais, which is written in full at the end of the MS., also an inventory of linen. The verso is blank.
- f. 4 a. 'Here bigyns Ywayne & Gaw-iñ,' printed in Ritson's *Metrical Romances*, vol. i. pp. 1-169; and *Ywain and Gawain*, ed. Gustav Schleich. Oppeln und Leipzig, 1887.
- f. 25 a. 'Ywain and Gawayn þus makes endyng | God grant vs al hys dere blyssing, Amen.'
- f. 25 b. 'Here bigyns þe proces of þe seuyn sages,' printed in *The Seven Sages of Rome*, ed. Killis Campbell. Boston, 1907.
- f. 48 b. A poem of 94 lines, beginning 'Al es bot a fantum þat [we] with ffare, | vs be houes ilka day heþen make us ʒare | forto wend fra þis werld naked & bare | bot our wyndyng clathe with outhen any gare,' printed in *Englische Studien*, xxi. pp. 201-204; and in Horstman's *Richard Rolle*, ii. pp. 457, 8.
- f. 49 a. 'Here bigins prophcies of Merlin,' see pp. 103-

- f. 50 b. 'Incipit narracio de domino denario' [Sir Peny], printed in Ritson's *Pieces of Ancient Popular Poetry*, *Second Edition*, pp. 103-108; Wright's *Latin Poems of Walter Mapes* (Camden Society), pp. 359-61; and *Englische Studien*, xxi. pp. 204-207.
- f. 51 b. A Rood Poem with the heading, 'Vos qui transitis: si crimina flere uelitis | *Per* me transite: qui sum janua vite | Bides a while and haldes 3oure pais | and heres what God him seluen sais | hingand on þe rode,' printed in *Englische Studien*, xxi. pp. 207-209; and in Horstman's *Richard Rolle*, ii. p. 457. At the end is written in a later hand 'de domino denario | mani thinges not to | be reiected.'
- f. 52 a. Minot's poems.
- f. 57 b. 'Hic incipit euangelium nichodemi,' printed in the *Middle-English Harrowing of Hell and Gospel of Nicodemus*, ed. W. H. Hulme. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. C. London, 1907. (Contains a description of the MS., pp. xxii-xxv.)
- f. 67 a. A poem on the Seven Deadly Sins, printed in *Cursor Mundi*, pp. 1527-51.
- f. 69 a. A poem on Penance, printed in *Cursor Mundi*, pp. 1560-86.
- f. 73 b. A metrical exposition of the Lord's Prayer, also printed in *Cursor Mundi*, pp. 1437-55. This ends on f. 75 a; the verso is blank.
- f. 76 a. The Pricke of Conscience, which has been taken by Dr. Morris as the basis of his edition of *Hampole's* poem printed for the Philological Society.
- f. 113 b. The fly-leaf has some notes on the points of a horse, beginning, 'A horss hath xxv *propertes* þat ys to say | he hath iiij off a lyon | iiij of an ox.' (See *Reliquiae Antiquae*, i. p. 232, for a similar scrap.) Then follows, in a later hand, a poem on the siege of Calais in 1400; it is printed in *Reliquiae Antiquae*, vol. ii. pp. 21-24. On the back of f. 144 is written Richard Chawfer (? for Chawser), from which was no doubt copied the misleading title of the volume.

The handwriting of the MS. is of the first twenty years of the fifteenth century¹. The evidence afforded by the poem printed at p. 101 would be in favour of a date immediately before the Battle of Shrewsbury in 1403. For the enthusiastic partisan of the conspirators against Henry the Fourth would hardly have written in such a strain after the battle which shattered the hopes of his party. At the utmost we cannot carry the *composition* of the concluding portion of this piece down later than 1407, and it is difficult to conceive of its being copied as it stands later than the date which marks the definitive triumph of Henry the Fourth.

The Poems were printed for the first time by Ritson in 1795. The title-page of this scarce book is as follows:—Poems on Interesting Events in the reign of King Edward III. written, in the year MCCCCLII. by Laurence Minot. With a preface, dissertations, notes and a glossary. London: Printed by T. Bensley, for T. Egerton, Whitehall, 1795. The editor's name does not appear anywhere in the volume. The preface is followed by two dissertations, (1) On the Scottish wars of King Edward III, and (2) On the Title of King Edward III to the Crown of France. The text follows the MS. closely and accurately. Pages 55–151 are occupied by notes, mostly historical, and largely consisting of extensive quotations from Berners' translation of Froissart. The glossary, pp. 153–173, is followed by six pages of corrections and additional notes. A second edition, practically a reprint, was issued in 1825, with Ritson's name on the title. The poems were again printed by Wright, in his Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, where they occupy pp. 58–91 of the first volume. Lastly, they have been edited by Dr. Wilhelm Scholle as the fifty-second volume of *Quellen und Forschungen*, Strassburg. His book contains an

¹ 'Seems to have been written in the time of Richard II or towards the close of the fourteenth century; and not, as appeared to Warton, who knew nothing of the age of MSS. and probably never saw this, "in the reign of King Henry the Sixth,"' Ritson, *Metrical Romances*, iii. p. 229. Wright thinks we owe our copy of the poems to the interest awakened in the exploits of Edward the Third by Henry the Fifth's successes in France. (*Political Poems*, i. p. xxii.)

elaborate grammatical and metrical study of the poems, a normalized text, and a few notes. The first four songs are also edited by Mätzner, *Sprachproben*, i. pp. 320-7; the second and ninth by Wülker in his *Altenglisches Lesebuch*, i. pp. 77-80, 159-61; the third, fourth, and the first 108 lines of the seventh by Morris and Skeat, in *Specimens of Early English*, Part ii. pp. 126-37, 315-17; the first three by Emerson, in *A Middle English Reader*. A dissertation, principally on the grammar and historical interest of the author, was published by F. J. Bierbaum at Halle in 1876¹. A study of the Poems in their historic setting was contributed to the Programm of the Königsberg Realgymnasium by Max Dangel in 1888.

Of the writer, nothing is known beyond his name, which he has given us in v. 1 and vii. 20. No further information can be gleaned from his poems about himself. He probably mentions a friend of his in v. 59. Three of his poems are connected with Yorkshire; the expedition of Edward Baliol was organized there, and best chronicled by some monk connected with Meaux and Bridlington; in the Battle of Neville's Cross he gives a special mention to the Archbishop of York, and in the last ballad he celebrates the exploit of a Yorkshire man.

But in the absence of direct information about the author, it may be worth while to set down what is known about his contemporaries of the same name; it may help some more fortunate searcher. The Minot family was, in the 14th century, connected mainly with the counties of York and Norfolk. Sir John Minot appears in a return of 1324 as a knight of Yorkshire (*Parliamentary Writs*, ii. p. 1174). In the first year of Edward the Third's reign he held three parts of a knight's fee in the Manor of Thresk from John Lord Mowbray (*Calend. Inquisit. post Mortem*, ii. p. 6). In 1327, while resident in the Wapentake of Brudeforth (Birdforth, N. Riding), he is associated with William Darrell in raising forces for Edward's

¹ See also, ten Brink, *English Literature* (Eng. translation), i. pp. 322-4; Professor Herford's article in the *Dictionary of National Biography*; and Alois Brandl, *Spielmannsverhältnisse in frühmittel-englischer Zeit* (*Sitzungsberichte der k. preussischen Akademie*), xli. (1910).

Scottish expedition of that year (*Rotuli Scotiae*, i, p. 223 a, and p. 657 a). He obtained a grant of free warren in Carlton, Calton, Hoton and Skipton-upon-Swale, in 1333 (*Calend. Rot. Chart.* p. 167). In 1338 he is witness to a deed by which William Darell founds a chantry in Elvedmere Church (*Archbishop Melton's Register*, f. 265 a), to which a Laurence de Cysseford was collated in 1349 (*Zouche's Register*, f. 167 b). He was the owner of Carlton Miniot (*Yorkshire Archæological Journal*, ii. p. 92), which was no doubt called by his name to distinguish it from the many other Carltons. The church of Carlton Minot was dedicated to St. Laurence (*id.* p. 185), a fact of some small significance when we remember that Laurence was not a very common Christian name in the 14th century. Of Sir John Minot's children nothing is known directly; but the John Mynyot, Esq., who was a deponent in the Scrope and Grosvenor trial, was almost certainly his son and heir (*Scrope and Grosvenor Roll*, i. p. 70; ii. p. 229). Besides the Yorkshire estates he held land at Bekering in Kent (*Foedera*, iii. pt. iii. p. 190). A Sir Roger Mynyot held land from the Abbot of Egleston at Skitheby, in the Wapentake of Gilling West in 1284-5 (*Surtees Society*, xlix. p. 171). In 1298 he was summoned from Norfolk to perform military service against the Scots (*Parliamentary Writs*, i. p. 739), as also in 1300, and 1331. He was Sheriff of Northumberland in the former year (*Historical Documents, Scotland*, ii. p. 422, and *Liber Quotidianus Contrarotulatoris Garderobae*, p. 76). His name occurs frequently in documents cited by Harrison, *History of Yorkshire*. He is probably the person who held Thurning Manor in 15 Edw. I, who was lord of a manor at Langale in 13 Edw. I, and whose son Jeffrey had a town house in the parish of St. Stephen, Norwich, in 1316 (*Blomfield, History of Norfolk*, iv. pp. 85, 166; viii. 280; x. 163).

Michael Myniot was a prominent London merchant of the time. In 1313 he obtained a pardon as an adherent of Lancaster (*Parliamentary Writs*, ii. p. 1174). In 1319 he was nominated by the citizens of London as their representative in the York Parliament of that year, but in 1320 he was obliged to renounce the freedom of the city (*Liber Albus*, p. 576; *Riley*,

Memorials of London, letter E. 103). He was tried for extortion in 1329 (*Annales Londonienses*, in *Chronicles of Edw. I and II*, p. 244). In Harleian charter (Brit. Museum) 86 A. 27 of 5 Edw. III, he assigns his interest in an estate which he holds for debt. He was prospering in 6 Edw. III, and acquiring lands in Gloucestershire (*Inquisitiones post Mortem*, ii. p. 51). He was the king's wine merchant in 1338 (*Rotuli Scotiae*, i. p. 543 a, 546 b, 553 b). He was dead in 1351 (*Calendar of Letters from the Mayor of London, &c.*, ed. Sharpe, p. 22, piece 41).

Another man of the same name was in the service of the king. Thomas Mynot, 'Notaire le Roi,' accompanied William Stury and William de Burtone to Holland between Dec. 6, 1351, and Feb. 26, 1352, to receive possession of the castle of Saintgeretruydensberg in Flanders (*Record Office, Exchequer, Q. R. H. C. H.* 7313). He is evidently a person of importance, as he receives pay at the rate of 40 pence a day. He is probably to be identified with Thomas Minot, Archbishop of Dublin from 1363 to 1375: see *Chartularies of St. Mary's Abbey, Dublin*, ed. J. T. Gilbert, *Rolls Series*, 1884. It is perhaps worth noting that the time of his mission was contemporaneous with the capture of Guisnes, an obscure event little noticed by the English chroniclers, but treated in detail in Minot's last poem. The Minots of the 14th century were then landed gentry and people of considerable standing, and it is not likely, as Brandl has pointed out, that a member of the family was a professional minstrel. Probably he was a younger son, who took an active part, as a soldier of fortune, in some of the affairs about which he sings.

Minot's poems were plainly written under the immediate influence of the events which form their subjects. Indeed, in stirring times like Edward the Third's, when striking events crowded one another out of remembrance, a writer of this kind of verse must treat the topic of the moment. We may therefore assume that the poet's activity as represented in these poems extended from 1333¹ to 1352 A.D. There are traces of a revision,

¹ See p. 38 for a discussion of the date of the first poem.

probably about the latter date, in the use at v. 41 of Henry of Derby's later title (conferred in 1352), in the inserted connecting link, iii. 117-126, and in the added lines 57-70, 79-81, of the sixth piece¹. The headings of the poems may be of the same date, but it is quite possible that they have been added by a copyist; those prefixed to ii and xi are very inept.

It is highly probable that a poet of such evident facility as Minot produced much more verse than we have here. But the only piece which I can point to, with any confidence, as his, is the Hymn to Jesus Christ and the Virgin (Religious Pieces, E. E. T. S. No. 26, p. 75), which bears a striking resemblance in style and language to the poems before us.

The most remarkable feature of Minot's style is the constant use made of alliterative phrases, the common stock of the writers of romances². But he varies the traditional manner by novel combinations of the well-worn phrases. Unlike the later romancers of the Sir Thopas school he makes sparing use of the *cheville* and the merely ornamental epithet. Further, he is at his best in those poems where the alliteration is carried out most systematically; there is a great distance between the loose and rambling narrative of the third poem and the swing and vigour of the sixth or tenth. The long line poems, where the artistic difficulties are multiplied, are, as a whole, better and more effective than the short line ones. But the fetters of a special art tradition impose on his work a somewhat constrained and mechanical air. Nor is this relieved by any touch of imagination. There is an absence of anything like simile or metaphor; a bald and realistic simplicity prevails³. Still his turn is lyrical rather than narrative. His direct historical value is small;

¹ See p. 68.

² This point is illustrated fully in the notes; phrases peculiar to Minot seem: 'made midelerd and þe mone,' i. 5; 'þaire wapin es oway,' v. 36; 'gold gert all þat gale,' vi. 66; 'ken ȝow ȝowre crde,' viii. 4, ix. 38, xi. 14; 'with dole to dere,' viii. 10.

³ Compare for instance, 'Sum lay stareand on þe sternes, | And sum lay knocked out þaire hernes,' iii. 67, 68; 'þai sail in þe see-gronde fissches to fede,' x. 4; 'Wele war þai armed vp to þe chin,' v. 85; and the stanza in the eighth poem which begins with l. 73.

though he preserves now and then a curious detail which has escaped the contemporaneous English Chroniclers¹, he adds little to our store of facts about the wars of the third Edward. But he is the abstract of the spirit of his time, its undoubted bravery, its glitter, its savagery, its complete absence of pity for the conquered. The greatest merit of his poems lies in their warm and spontaneous expression of national feeling. His predecessors in the political poem had attacked abuses, exposed grievances, or written in the service of a faction. He is the first to speak in the name of the English nation just awakened to a consciousness of its unity and strength.

GRAMMAR.

It must be borne in mind that the following remarks deal with the language of Minot modified by a copyist who lived at least fifty years later than the poet. Wherever forms occur in rhymes not easily varied they are specially noted as probably representing the author's own practice.

NOUNS. The termination of the genitive sing. in monosyllabic nouns is *es*, a distinct syllable; so *dedes*, i. 26; *Goddess*, iii. 10; *kinges*, iii. 24; &c. Exceptions are *mans*, xi. 9; *prince*, vii. 18, disyllabic, but does not take an *s*, as it is followed by a word beginning with *s*. The disyllabic *Edward-es*, v. 76, has the full inflection; but on the other hand, *Adams*, vi. 76; *somers*, x. 7; *Edward*, iii. 84, is uninflected. *Scottes*, i. 87 (perhaps an adjective, compare i. 79), *galaies*², iii. 51, 97; *galayes*, iii. 78; and *mens* (better *mennes*), iii. 84, are the only genitive plurals.

Four plurals in *is* occur—*stremis*, iii. 73; *brenis*, vi. 3; *helfmis*, vii. 105; *drewris*, vii. 126. Elsewhere the termination is written *es*, except in *enmys*, i. 46; *pelers*, ii. 15; *sons*, iii. 15; *galays*, iii. 79; *nakers*, iv. 80; *barons*, v. 26; *kaitefs*, v. 58; *stremers*, v. 75; *sawls*, v. 88; *schilterouns*, vi. 6; *sins*, vi. 81; *felaws*, vii. 135;

¹ See the notes on i. 19, v. 59, 78, x. 19. He was plainly very imperfectly informed when he wrote the third poem.

² The dot . under a letter means it is not pronounced.

dais, vii. 171; *leders*, viii. 94; *taburns*, x. 8; *ankers*, x. 14. The termination *es* forms a syllable in the disyllabic words, *gaylayes*, iii. 60; *sergantes*, v. 22; *bisschoppes*, vii. 137; but with disyllables elsewhere it does not count as a distinct syllable; compare *bischoppes*, iii. 17; *prelates*, *id.*; *tibandēs*, iii. 58; *Normandēs*, *passim*; *biginges*, vi. 35; *sergantes*, viii. 28; *marchandēs*, x. 26. In monosyllables the termination of the plural is about as frequently pronounced as not: *inēs*, viii. 27, rhymes with *bigins*; but *ines*, ix. 52; *dayēs*, iv. 32, rhymes with *Valayse*. As a rule, words the singulars of which end in a combination of two or three consonants have the *es* distinctly pronounced; so *harmes*, ii. 26, vi. 43; *knightes*, iv. 29, &c.; *bankes*, vii. 21, viii. 20; *hundes*, viii. 76; *clerkes*, ix. 14. *Eghen*, vii. 92; *ine*, vii. 79, are the only plurals in *n*. Mutation plurals are *men*, i. 84, &c. and its compounds; *hend*, iii. 32 (but also *handes*, iii. 57); *fote* (dative pl., see note on iv. 59). *zere*, iii. 110; *score*, vii. 57; *myle*, viii. 42; *buriasē*, v. 15; *burgase*, viii. 65, are plurals of the same form as the singular. *Frende*, vi. 19, I take to be singular; the plural is *frendes*, ii. 28, vii. 75.

ADJECTIVES. The scribe's arbitrary use of the final *e* makes the question of the adjectival inflections difficult in so short a text. *Grete*, iv. 62, is a clear case of the plural adjective. But it seems to be monosyllabic at ix. 14, though with a plural noun. So the plural *smale*, i. 6 and vi. 64, is monosyllabic, for it rhymes with *balē*, which rhymes with *sale* (= *sall*) at vii. 15. Compare also v. 80 for the plural *small*, rhyming with *wall*. Of the inflected definite adjective there is no clear example, though the reading *false*, vii. 72, decidedly improves a halting rhythm. The proper adjectives, *Franche*, i. 13; vii. 77, 118, 151; viii. 33, 46; xi. 24; *Duche*, iii. 20, are disyllabic; compare *Bruysē blode* in Thomas of Erceldoune, 482, &c. We may conclude that when Minot wrote, the adj. inflections had almost disappeared in his dialect, but were still occasionally available for verse. Adjectives are compared by *er* and *est*; *more* and *most* are not used in comparisons. The comparative *lenger*, iv. 35, with vowel change, may be noted.

PRONOUNS. The personal pronouns are *I*, *me*, *we*, *us*; *pou*

(*tou*, in combination with verbs, *sal^{tou}*, *wilt^{ou}*, *ert^{ou}*), *þe*, *ȝe* (nominative), *ȝow* (dative, as at vi. 1, 23, and accusative). The demonstrative pronoun of the third person is Sing. Nom. *he*, *it*, *yt*; Dat. and Acc. *him*, *hym*, *it*; Pl. Nom. *þai*, *þay*; Dat. and Acc. *þam*. The simple personal pronoun serves also as a reflexive, but *him self* occurs once, ix. 50. The possessive pronouns are *my*, *mi* (v. 4, 5), *þi*, *þine* (absolute), *his*, *owre*, *ȝowre*, *þaire*, *þayre* (iii. 23). The demonstrative pronouns are *þis*, Plural *þir*, *þise* (ii. 26); *þat*, Plural *þa* (v. 61), *þo* (iv. 32, v. 57). The definite article *þe* is not inflected; but the variant form *þa* occurs once at vii. 166. The regular relative pronoun for both persons and things is *þat*; *who* occurs once, vi. 29; *who so* twice, iii. 118, v. 69; *wham* once, xi. 4; *what* at iii. 88; *what* and *whilk* are also used accompanied by nouns. Noteworthy adjective pronouns are *fele*, iii. 17, x. 5; *fone*, ii. 28, v. 45; *fune*, ii. 29. *Many*, *mani*, is used before a singular noun without the indefinite article: so *many kene knight*, v. 26, 42.

VERBS. The glossary should be specially consulted for the inflections of *be*, *mai*, *sal*, *will*, *kun*, *dar*, *wit* and *mot*. In the pres. ind. sing. the first person has no inflection (*sai*, vii. 73; *say*, v. 31; *here*, i. 65), that of the second person occurs once in *sittes*, i. 1, while the third has *es*, *es*, *s* or *is* (*betes*, ii. 25; *takes*, viii. 27; *haues*, xi. 36; *gase*, ii. 25; *has*, ii. 4; *fars*, iii. 40; *wakkins*, vi. 10; *ordanis*, a single instance of this termination, iv. 5). A solitary first person plural is *we knaw*, vii. 125; the second person is also uninflected, unless *haues*, in 'For þou and sir Iohn þi son haues kast me in care,' ix. 60, be taken as such; the third person is uninflected when the nominative is a pronoun, otherwise it takes *es* (*þai sail*, x. 4; *ligges*, iii. 99; *makes*, v. 3; but *mase*, viii. 34). A midland form occurs twice in *lien*, and *gapin* (rhymes with *wapin*), vii. 135.

The imperative sing. is as a rule flectionless (*send*, i. 7; *dresce*, i. 8). *Gretes* and *wendes*, xi. 29, seem to be exceptions. The endings of the plural are *es*, *s*, *is* (*hides*, vi. 17; *herkins*, vi. T. 1; *helis*, vi. 17); sometimes it is flectionless, as in *war*, ii. 6.

The present subjunctive is without distinctive terminations.

In the preterites of the strong verbs only one word shows

the termination of the plural, *songen*, vii. 138, where the ablaut has disappeared. *Nomen*, ix. 53, which, as the MS. stands, must be a pret. plural, is probably a past participle, *had* having dropped out. All other verbs make no distinction between the sing. and plural in this tense.

The inflection of the preterite of weak verbs is the same throughout, and is either *ed*, *id*, *d* or *t*. Forms in *id* are: *helpid*, *delid*, *leuid*, *bileuid*, *likid*, *semid*. Full and shortened forms of the same word occur, as *delt*, vii. 98; *delid*, vii. 141. The following strong forms, preterites, or past participles in Minot have since been replaced by weak ones—*wroken*, *wrokin*, ii. 4, 5; *schope*, iii. 1; *wex*, iv. 48; *ɝolden*, viii. 89; *baken*, ix. 51.

Infinitives in *en* and *n* are: *witten*, vii. 4; *slaken*, ix. 49 (both in rhyme); *saine*, i. 81 (rhymes with *plaine*). In all other cases this mood has no inflection. The usual sign of the infinitive is *to*; *at* (three times), and *for to* go with the gerundial infinitive.

The present participles which occur—*alweldand* (adjective), *dareand*, *fleand* (rhymes with *understand*), *ligand*, *stareand*, *sayland*, *wepeand* (rhymes with *understand*), *wonand*—all end in the Northern termination *and*. The strong past participle ends in *en*, *n*, or *in*, *yn*—the last two only in *betin*, ii. 8; *etin*, viii. 74, 76, 77; *to-dongyn*, vii. 148; *wrokin*, ii. 5. The weak past participle ends in *ed*, *d* or *t*, as *slaked* (rhymes with *naked*), i. 53; *mend*, i. 29. *Flemid*, *leuid*, *menid*, *wapnid* have *id*.

Of the adverbs, the following are noteworthy: genitive forms—*whils*, *els*; datives—*whilum*, *o-ferrum*, *to-ɝere*; accusative—*so gat*; instrumental—*for ɝi*. Comparatives are—*fer*, *ferr*, *here*, x. 14, *nerr*. *Senin*, ix. 44, is probably a scribe's slip for *sepin*. The adverbial inflection *e* is silent: so *wide*, i. 37; *dere*, i. 43.

It follows from the above remarks that the Grammar of the poems is in its main features Northern. The most noteworthy evidences of this are, the termination of the present indicative plural in *es*, the general absence of the termination of the infinitive, the use of *sal* and *suld*, of *ger* and *mun*, the ending of the present participle in *and*, the *en* of the past participle of strong verbs, the contracted *bud* (= behoved), the plural *hend*, the absence of plurals in *en* (except *eghen*, *ine*), the use of

þir, ilk, ilka, ilkone, slike and *sere*, of *at* with the infinitive, of *fra* (= from), *til* (= to), of *sogat* (= in such a way), and of *o-ferrum*. Northern also is the vocabulary, as the occurrence of the following words, specially Northern, shows—*big* (= to build), *biging*, *boun*, *busk*, *cant*, *cantly*, *dumþ*, *droupe*, *euill*, *flay* (to terrify), *gate*, *hundereth*, *ken*, *lithes*, *site*, *skriþ*, *sowed* (= smarted), *sternes*, *tipandes*, *wall* (= choice), *waniand*, *wery* (= to curse). The alliterative style points in the same direction. Northern, too, in the main, is the Phonology, a point which has been fully worked out by Dr. Scholle. It may suffice here to point out that *k* persists in *kirk*, *ilk*, &c.; *g* and *gg* in words like *lig*, *ligand*, *brig*, *rig*, *ligges*, where the corresponding Southern form has either softened or rejected them; and that the Northern *a* is retained as the representative of O.E. *ā* in *lare*, *sare*, *þare*, *mare*—all rhyming with *care*. But at the same time *o* is largely found as its representative; thus *more* and *sore* rhyme with *score*.

The dialect, then, is in basis Northern, but with a slight admixture of Midland forms. As rhymes like *gapin*—*wapin* show, we must set down these latter to the poet, and not to the transcriber. We may, therefore, infer that the poet lived on the border-land between the Northern and Midland areas; and to the east rather than the west, on the evidence of the terminations of the present plural indicative of the verbs. It is difficult to separate the characteristics of the poet and the scribe; but a comparison of other poems in the same MS., as, for instance, *Ywain* and *Gawain* and the piece printed at p. 101, goes to show that the scribe was more distinctly Northern. Possibly Minot belonged to the Norfolk branch of the family, while his transcriber might be a Lincolnshire or Yorkshire man (see p. 123, note on l. 134). But it may well be that the scribe had before him a copy made by a Midland man, and not that of Minot.

METRE.

Five of the poems (ii, v, ix, x, xi) are written in the alliterative *long line* with end rhyme. This form was mainly connected with the Northern and West Midland areas in the fourteenth century. Having a certain kinship to the Old English allitera-

tive verse, the strict syllabic principle is of little account in it, but it depends on stresses more or less regularly occurrent. It is a popular measure especially suited for recitation.

This *long line* is divided by a middle pause into two parts (indeed in the MS., for reasons of space, there being two columns to each page, the last three poems are written in half lines). In each half line there are at least two main *accents*, falling as a rule on the syllables having the alliterative letter. If there be three alliterative syllables, as in xi. 1, 2, there are also three main *accents*. In addition to the main *accents*, secondary stresses to the number of two or three occur in most lines¹. Either half line may end in a syllable altogether outside the measure, as ix. 6, 49, 50. There is considerable freedom as to the number of syllables in the measure; the prevailing rhythm is trochaic and dactylic.

Of the other poems, all written in *short line* with an iambic rhythm, the third and the first twenty lines of the seventh are in rhyming couplets of four measures to each line (with an occasional line of three, as iii. 3). The first measure often consists of a single syllable, as in iii. 1, 'Gód | þat schópe | both sé | and sánd'; so also iii. 12, 40, 61, 83, 89, 98, 102, 104, 110, 116-120; vii. 1, 6, 12, 13, 18, 19. Trisyllabic measures occasionally occur, as in 'Fór | þe gude wíll | þat þái | war ín,' iii. 116; 'Oure kíng | was cúmen | trewly | to téll,' iii. 11; 'When Phílip þe Válas hérd | of þís,' iii. 41; 'óf | a grete clérk | þat Mér|lin híght,' vii. 2. The effect of this verse form in Minot's hands is inartistic; the formlessness of such lines as iii. 70, 99, 105, 106 is curious.

The rhyme formulae of the remaining poems are *aabccb* (iv), *ababbcb* (vii. 21-172, viii), *ab ab ab ab* (i, vi), the last three stanzas of the sixth being extended to *ab ab ab ab c ac*. With the exception of the half line of the last three stanzas, the sixth poem is written throughout in lines of three measures, the seventh and eighth have four measures to the line, the first and fourth vary between three and four measures. The one syllable measure at the beginning of the line, and the occasional trisyllabic foot are

¹ Scholle lays down the rule that each line has either 4 + 3 or 3 + 3 accents, but many lines, especially in the first half, are then irregular.

also met with here, as in 'Gái | þai wár | and wéle | þai thóght,' i. 41; 'Óút | of his égh | en I vñ|derstánd,' vii. 92.

The elaboration of the alliterative effects in these poems should be noted. Alliteration of the same letter is often continued through a pair of lines, as i. 21, 22; vii. 83, 84; ix. 32, 33. Double alliteration occurs frequently in the *long line* with a rich effect, as, 'I wald noght SPare for to SPEke · Wist I to SPede,' x. 1; 'For at þe Neuil Cros · Nedes bud þam Knele,' ix. 28. Medial alliteration of R seems intended in such lines as 'A BORE es BROght on Bankes BaRe,' vii. 21; 'þe FRanche men war FREk to FaRe,' i. 13; 'A WeRe es WRought, i-wis,' vi. 31; 'OR 3e Be BROght on BeRe,' vi. 48. This elaboration is a mark of the later alliterative poetry; see Joseph of Arimathie (E. E. T. S., O. S., No. 44), p. x.

Except in the matter of capital letters, the *text* of the present edition follows the MS. closely. Additions are placed within square brackets and interlineations printed between accents. It seemed to me the bulk of the poems was hardly great enough to give a sure basis for an attempt at restoration. At the same time the most noteworthy readings of Scholle's (S) normalized edition are given in the foot-notes, where R stands for Ritson's edition of 1795 (see p. ix).

In the *notes* an attempt has been made to illustrate the affinity of Minot's style with the language of the Middle English romances, and to give so much historical information as will make the poems intelligible.

WOODSTOCK,

May 14, 1914.

A LIST OF BOOKS QUOTED BY BRIEF TITLES IN THE NOTES

- ÆLFRIC'S *Lives of Saints*. E. E. T. S., O. S., nos. 76, 82.
Aiol et Mirabel, ed. Foerster. Heilbronn, 1876-82.
Alisaunder, see Weber.
Alisaunder fragment, in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat.
Amis and Amiloun, ed. Kölbing. Heilbronn, 1884.
Anturs of Arther, see Robson.
Arthour and Merlin, ed. Kölbing. Leipzig, 1890.
Athelston, ed. Zupitza. Englische Studien, xiii. pp. 331-414.
Awntyrs of Arthure, see Laing.
The Babees Book. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 32.
Bernardus, and Early Scottish Prophecies. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 42.
Bestiary (in Old English Miscellany). E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 49.
Beues of Hamtoun. E. E. T. S., E. S., nos. xlvi, xlviii, lxv.
BÖDDEKER, *Altenglische Dichtungen des MS. Harl. 2253*. Berlin, 1878.
Bruce. E. E. T. S., E. S., nos. xi, xxi, xxix.
The Brut or the Chronicles of England. E. E. T. S., O. S., nos. 131, 136.
Castel off Loue. Philological Society, 1864.
Cheuelere Assigne. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. vi.
Cleanness (in E. E. Alliterative Poems). E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 1.
Cursor Mundi. E. E. T. S., O. S., nos. 57, 59, 62, 66, 68.
Pe Deuelis Perlament. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 24.
Early English Poems. Philological Society. Berlin, 1862.
Early English Psalter. Surtees Society, nos. xvi, xix.
Emare, ed. Gough.
Erl of Tolous, ed. Lüdtke. Berlin, 1881.
Gawayne and the Green Knight. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 4.
Generides, ed. Furnivall. Roxburghe Club, 1865.
Genesis and Exodus. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 7.
Guy of Warwick. E. E. T. S., E. S., nos. xxv, xxvi.
HALLIWELL, *The Thornton Romances*. Camden Society, 1844.
HAMPOLE'S *Psalter*, ed. Bramley. Oxford, 1884.
HAMPOLE, *The Pricke of Conscience*. Philological Society, 1863.
Havelok, ed. Holthausen. London, 1901.
Horn Childe, in *King Horn*, ed. Hall.

- HORSTMANN, *Altenglische Legenden, Neue Folge*. Heilbronn, 1881.
(Quoted as Horst. A. L. ii.)
- HORSTMANN, *Barbour's Legendensammlung*, 2 vols. Heilbronn, 1881-2.
- HORSTMANN, *Sammlung Altenglischer Legenden*. Heilbronn, 1878.
(Quoted as Horst. A. L. i.)
- Hymns to the Virgin and Christ*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 24.
- Ipomadon and Ipomydon*, in *Ipomedon in drei Englischen bearbeitungen*,
heraus. von E. Kölbing. Breslau, 1889.
- Juliana*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 51.
- King Horn*, ed. Hall. Oxford, 1901.
- King of Tars*, ed. Krause. Englische Studien, xi. pp. 33-62.
- Knight of Curtesy*, see Ritson.
- LAING, *Ancient Scottish Poetry*. Edinburgh, 1885.
- LANGTOFT (original French), ed. Wright. Rolls Series, 1866-8.
- LANGTOFT'S *Chronicle*, ed. Hearne, 2 vols. London, 1810.
- Laud Troy Book*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 121.
- Launsfal*, see Ritson.
- LA3AMON'S *Brut*, ed. Madden, 3 vols. London, 1847.
- Lay le Freine*, see Weber.
- Le bone Florence*, ed. Vietor. Marburg, 1893.
- Le Débat des Hérauts d'Armes*. Société des Anciens Textes Français.
Paris, 1877.
- Lybeaus Discomus*, ed. Kaluza. Leipzig, 1890.
- MÄTZNER, *Altenglische Sprachproben*, 2 vols. Berlin, 1867-9.
- MÄTZNER, *Worterbuch*. Berlin, 1878-85.
- Monumenta Franciscana*, ed. Brewer. Rolls Series, 1858.
- Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 8.
- Morte Arthur*, ed. Furnivall. London, 1864.
- Myrc, Duties of a Parish Priest*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 31.
- A New English Dictionary*. (Quoted as N. E. D.)
- Octavian*, ed. Sarrazin. Heilbronn, 1885.
- Old English Homilies*. Second Series, E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 53.
- Old English Miscellany*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 49.
- Otuel*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. xxxix.
- Partenay or Lusignen*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 22.
- Patience (in E. E. Alliterative Poems)*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 1.
- PEACOCK, *The Dialect of Manley and Corringham*. E. Dialect Society.
London, 1877.
- Pearl, The (in E. E. Alliterative Poems)*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 1.
- PECOCK, *Repressor of Overmuch Blaming of the Clergy*. Rolls Series,
2 vols. 1860.
- PERCY'S *Folio Manuscript*. 3 vols. Edd. Furnivall and Hales. London,
1867-8.

- Piers Plowman*, ed. Skeat. 5 vols. E. E. T. S., O. S., nos. 28, 38, 54, 67, 81.
- Political, Religious and Love Poems*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 15.
- Promptorium Parvulorum*, ed. Way. 3 vols. Camden Society, 1843-53-65.
- Ratis Raving*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 43.
- Rauf Coilyear*, see Laing.
- Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 26.
- Reliquiae Antiquae*, ed. Wright and Halliwell, 2 vols. London, 1841-3.
- Richard Coeur de Lion*, ed. Brunner. Wien, 1913.
- Richard the Redeless*, see *Piers Plowman*, part iii.
- RITSON, *Ancient English Metrical Romances*, 3 vols. London, 1802.
- ROBSON, *Three E. E. Metrical Romances*. Camden Society, 1842.
- Roland fragment*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. xxxv.
- Rouland and Vernagu*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. xxxix.
- Rowland and Otuell*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. xxxv.
- Sege off Melayne*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. xxxv.
- The Seven Sages of Rome*, ed. K. Campbell. Boston, 1907.
- Seyn Julian*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 51.
- Sir Amadace*, see Robson.
- Sir Cleges*, ed. Treichel. Engl. Studien, xxii. pp. 345-389.
- Sir Degrevant*, see Halliwell.
- Sir Eglamour*, ed. Schleich. Berlin, 1906.
- Sir Ferumbras*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. xxxiv.
- Sir Gowther*, ed. Breul. Oppeln, 1886.
- Sir Isumbras*, ed. Zupitza u. Schleich. Berlin, 1901.
- Sir Orfeo*, ed. Zielke. Breslau, 1880.
- Sir Perceval*, see Halliwell.
- Sir Tristrem*, ed. Kölbing. Heilbronn, 1882.
- SKELTON, *Poems*, ed. Dyce. 2 vols. London, 1843.
- SMALL, *English Metrical Homilies*. Edinburgh, 1862.
- Sowdone of Babylone*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. xxxviii.
- Squyr of Lowe Degre*, see Ritson.
- St. Marherete*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 13.
- Stewart's Boece*. 3 vols. Rolls Series, 1858.
- Swete Susan*, ed. Köster. Strassburg, 1895.
- Syr Tryamoure*. Percy Society.
- Thomas of Erceldoune*, ed. Brandl. Berlin, 1880.
- Torrent of Portyngale*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. li.
- Towneley Plays*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. lxxi.
- The Destruction of Troy*. E. E. T. S., O. S., nos. 39, 56. (Quoted as Troy Book.)

- Wallace, by Henry the Minstrel.* Glasgow, 1869.
 WEBER, *Metrical Romances.* 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1810.
William of Palerne. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. i.
 WRIGHT, *Political Poems.* 2 vols. Rolls Series, 1859-61.
 WRIGHT, *Political Songs.* Camden Society, 1839.
Wyntoun, ed. Laing. 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1872-9.
York Plays, ed. L. T. Smith. Oxford, 1885.
Yvain and Gawain, ed. Schleich. Oppeln, 1887.
-

- Robertus de Avesbury, de Gestis Edwardi Tertii.* See Murimuth, below.
Chronicon Galfridi le Baker de Swynebroke, ed. E. M. Thompson.
 Oxford, 1889.
 BLOMFIELD'S *History of Norfolk.* 1805-10.
Chronique d'un Bourgeois de Valenciennes, ed. Lettenhove, published
 for the Académie Royale de Belgique, 1877.
Chronique Normande. Société de l'Histoire de France. Paris, 1868.
 DE KLERK, *Van den derden Edewaert*, ed. Willems. Gent, 1840.
 FROISSART, mostly quoted from Lettenhove's ed. published for the
 Académie Royale de Belgique. 25 vols. 1870-7.
Chronicon Henrici Knighton, ed. J. R. Lumby. 2 vols. Rolls Series,
 1889-95.
 LOCKHART'S *Isle of Wight*; in the History of Hampshire by Woodward
 and others. 3 vols. London, n. d.
 MEYER, *Commentarii sive Annales Rerum Flandricarum.* Antverpiae,
 1561.
Adae Murimuthii Continuatio Chronicarum, ed. E. M. Thompson.
 Rolls Series, 1889. In same vol., Avesbury.
Nangis, ed. H. Géraud. Société de l'Histoire de France. Paris, 1843.
 OUDEGHERST, *Annales de Flandres.* 2 vols. Ghent, 1789.
 VILLANI, *Istoria Fiorentina.* 8 vols. Milan, 1802.

MINOT

I

Lithes and I sall tell þow tyll
þe bataile of Halidon Hyll.

[f. 52 a¹.

TREW king, þat sittes in trone,
Vnto þe I tell my tale,
And vnto þe I bid a bone,
For þou ert bute of all my bale.
Als þou made midelerd and þe mone 5
And bestes and fowles grete and smale,
Vnto me send þi socore sone
And dresce my dedes in þis dale.

In þis dale I droupe and dare
For dern dedes þat done me dere. 10
Of Ingland had my hert grete care
When Edward founded first to were.
þe Franche men war frek to fare
Ogaines him, with scheld and spere;
þai turned ogayn with sides sare, 15
And al paire pomp noght worth a pere.

Title, l. 2. *All* or *of* is to be inserted before *þe*. 4. *bute*] *bote*
is the only form in rhyme, iv. 58; vi. 26. 6. *fowles*] *bridde* S.
10. *dern*] perhaps *derue* is to be read. *done*] *dose* S.

A pere of *prise* es more sum tyde
 þan all þe boste of Normondye.
 þai sent þaire schippes on ilka side
 With flesch and wine and whete & rye. 20
 With hert and hand, es noght at hide,
 For to help Scotland gan þai hye:
 þai fled, and durst no dede habide,
 And all þaire fare noght wurth a flye.

ffor all þaire fare þai durst noght fight, 25
 For dedes dint had þai slike dout;
 Of Scotland had þai neuer sight
Ay whils þai war of wordes stout.
 þai wald haue mend þam at þaire might
 And besy war þai þareobout. 30
 Now God help Edward in his right,
 Amen, and all his redy rowt.

His redy rout mot Ihesu spede
 And saue þam both by night and day;
 þat lord of heuyn mot Edward lede 35
 And maintene him als he wele may.
 þe Scottes now all wide will sprede
 For þai haue failed of þaire pray;
 Now er þai dareand all for drede
 þat war bifore so stout and gay. 40

Gai þai war and wele þai thoght
 On þe Erle Morre and oþer ma;
 þai said it suld ful dere be boght
 þe land þat þai war flemid fra.

22. *Forto* always in one word in the MS.
 writes *ihesus* in full at f. 64 a².

33. The same scrible

Philip Valays wordes wrought 45
 And said he suld paire enmys sla ;
 Bot all paire wordes was for noght, [f. 52 a².
 Pai mun be met if pai war ma.

Ma manasinges 3it haue pai maked,
 Mawgre mot pai haue to mede. 50
 And many nightes als haue pai waked
 To dere all Inghland with paire dede.
 Bot, loued be God, þe pride es slaked
 Of þam þat war so stout on stede,
 And sum of þam es leuid all naked 55
 Noght fer fro Berwik opon Twede.

A litell fro þat forsaid toune
 Halydon hill þat es þe name,
 Pare was crakked many a crowne
 Of wild Scottes and alls of tame : 60
 Pare was paire baner born all doune ;
 To mak slike boste pai war to blame :
 Bot neuer þe les ay er pai boune
 To wait Inghland with sorow and schame.

Shame pai haue als I here say ; 65
 At Donde now es done paire daunce,
 And wend pai most anoper way
 Euy n thurgh Flandres into France.
 On Filip Valas fast cri pai
 Pare for to dwell and him avaunce ; 70
 And no thing list þam þan of play
 Sen þam es tide pis sary chance.

68. The nasalized *a* in Romance words before *mb*, *ng*, *nc*, *nd*, *nt* (ten Brink, *C's Sprache*, § 70) is written either *a* or *au* in the MS. ; so both *France* and *Fraunce*, *chance* and *chaunce*, &c. 69. *Valas*] so four times in MS. *Valays*, vii. 144, and *Valayse*, iv. 31, in rhyme.

þis sary chaunce þam es bitid,
 For þai war fals and wonder fell;
 For cursed caitefes er þai kid 75
 And ful of treson, suth to tell.
 Sir Ion þe Comyn had þai hid,
 In haly kirk þai did him qwell;
 And þarfore many a Skottis brid
 With dole er dight þat þai most dwell. 80
 þare dwelled oure king, þe suth to saine,
 With his menþe a litell while;
 He gaf gude confort on þat plaine
 To all his men about a myle.
 All if his men war mekill of maine 85
 Euer þai douted þam of gile;
 þe Scottes gaudes might no thing gain,
 For all þai stumbilde at þat stile.
 þus in þat stowre þai left þaire liue
 þat war bifore so proud in prese. 90
 Ihesu, for þi woundes fiue,
 In Ingland help vs to haue pese.

II

Now for to tell þow will I turn
 Of [þe] batayl of Banocburn.

SKOTTES out of Berwik and of Abirdene, [f. 52 b¹.
 At þe Bannok burn war 3e to kene;
 þare slogh 3e many sakles, als it was sene,
 And now has king Edward wroken it, I wene,
 It es wrokin, I wene, wele wurth þe while; 5
 War 3it with þe Skottes, for þai er ful of gile.

80. *þat*] better *þar*.

Title, l. 2. *þe* supplied by R.

6. *3it*] *þow* S.

Whare er 3e, Skottes of Saint Iohnes toune?
 Þe boste of 3owre baner es betin all doune;
 When 3e bosting will bede sir Edward es boune
 For to kindel 3ow care and crak 3owre crowne: 10
 He has crakked 3owre croune, wele worth þe while;
 Schame bityde þe Skottes, for þai er full of gile.

Skottes of Strifflin war steren and stout;
 Of God ne of gude men had þai no dout;
 Now haue þai, þe pelers, priked about;
 Bot at þe last sir Edward rifild þaire rout,
 He has rifild þaire rout, wele wurth þe while,
 Bot euer er þai vnder, bot gaudes and gile.

cf. pelen freq.
 = plunder
 15

Rughfute riueling, now kindels þi care,
 Berebag with þi boste, þi biging es bare 20
 Fals wretche and forsworn whider wiltou fare?
 Busk þe vnto Brug and abide þare;
 Þare, wretche, saltou won and wery þe while;
 Þi dwelling in Donde es done for þi gile.

Þe Skotte gase in Burghes and betes þe stretes, 25
 All þise Inglis men harmes he hetes;
 Fast makes he his mone to men þat he metes,
 Bot fone frendes he findes þat his bale betes:
 Fune betes his bale, wele wurth þe while,
 He vses all threting with gaudes and gile. 30

Bot many man thretes and spekes ful ill
 Þat sum tyme war better to be stane still;

18. *Bot euer*] perhaps *And euer* is to be read.

22. *brig* MS.

25. *Skotte*] So R. *Skottes* in MS.

26. *All þise*] perhaps better

In all wise; see iii. 47.

þe Skot in his wordes has wind for to spill,
 For at þe last Edward sall haue al his will:
 He had his will at Berwik, wele wurth þe while; 35
 Skottes broght him þe kayes, bot get for þaire gile.

III

How Edward þe king come in Braband
 And toke homage of all þe land.

GOD þat schope both se and sand
 Saue Edward king of Ingland,
 Both body, saul and life,
 And grante him ioy withowten strif:
 For mani men to him er wroth 5
 In Fraunce and in Flandres both:
 For he defendes fast his right,
 And þarto Ihesu grante him might,
 And so to do both night and day,
 þat yt may be to Goddes pay, 10
 Oure king was cumen, trewly to tell, [f. 52 b².
 Into Brabant for to dwell.
 þe kayser Lowis of Bauere,
 þat in þat land þan had no pere,
 He and als his sons two 15
 And oper princes many mo,
 Bisschoppes and prelates war þare fele
 þat had ful mekill werldly wele,
 Princes and pople, ald and ȝong

34. S. supplies *sir* before *Edward*.

2. *Ingland*] *Ingeland* S., see vi. 1, note. 11. *trewly*] so S., *trely*
 MS. 15. *sons*] *sunes* S.; perhaps better, *He and his two sons also*.

19. *ȝong*] *ȝung* S.

Al þat spac with Duche tung, 20
 All þai come with grete honowre
 Sir Edward to saue and socoure,
 And *proferd* him, with all payre rede,
 For to hald þe kinges stede.
 Þe duke of Braband, first of all, 25
 Swore, for thing þat might bifall,
 Þat he suld, both day and night,
 Help sir Edward in his right,
 In toun, in feld, in frith and fen;
 Þis swore þe duke and all his men 30
 And al þe lordes þat with him lend
 And þarto held þai vp þaire hend.
 Þan king Edward toke his rest
 At Andwerp, whare him liked best;
 And þare he made his mone playne 35
 Þat no man suld say þare ogayne;
 His mone þat was gude and lele,
 Left in Braband ful mekill dele;
 And all þat land vntill þis day
 Fars þe better for þat iornay. 40

When Philip þe Valas herd of þis,
 Þarat he was ful wroth, i-wis;
 He gert assemble his barounes
 Princes and lordes of many tounes.
 At Pariss toke þai þaire counsaile 45
 Whilk pointes might þam moste availe;
 And in all wise þai þam bithoght
 To stroy Ingland and bring to noght.
 Schipmen sone war efter sent
 To here þe kinges cumandment; 50

40. *better*] *bet* S. improving grammar and metre.

42. *i-wis*] *I wis* MS.

And þe galaies men also
 þat wist both of wele and wo.
 He cumand þan þat men suld fare
 Till Ingland, and for no thing spare
 Bot brin and sla both man and wife 55
 And childe, þat none suld pas with life:
 Þe galay men held vp þaire handes
 And thanked God of þir tipandes.

At Hamton, als I vnderstand, [f. 53 a¹.
 Come þe gaylayes vnto land, 60
 And ful fast þai slogh and brend,
 Bot noght so mekill als sum men wend;
 For, or þai wened, war þai mett
 With men þat sone þaire laykes lett.
 Sum was knocked on þe heuyd 65
 þat þe body þare bileuid;
 Sum lay stareand on þe sternes,
 And sum lay knocked out þaire hernes:
 þan with þam was none oþer gle,
 Bot ful fain war þai þat might fle. 70
 Þe galay men, þe suth to say,
 Most nedes turn anoþer way;
 þai soght þe stremis fer and wide
 In Flandres and in Seland syde.

þan saw þai whare Cristofer stode 75
 At Armouth, opon þe flude;
 þan wen[t] þai þeder all bidene
 Þe galayes men with hertes kene,
 Viiij. and xl. galays and mo,
 And with þam als war tarettes two, 80

60. *gaylayes*] a mistake for *galayes*. 69. *with þam* is suspicious;
 rather something like 'þam likes now nan oþer gle,' Cursor, 54. 76.
Armouth] *Aremouth* S., see vi. 1, note. 77. *went*] so Wright,
wen MS. See Havelok, ed. Skeat, p. xxxvii.

And oper many of galiotes,
 With grete noumber of smale botes ;
 All þai houed on þe flode
 To stele sir Edward mens gode.
 Edward oure king þan was noght pere, 85
 Bot sone when it come to his ere,
 He sembled all his men full still
 And said to þam what was his will.
 Ilk man made him redy þen,
 So went þe king and all his men 90
 Vnto paire schippes ful hastily
 Als men þat war in dede doghty.
 Þai fand þe galay men grete wane
 A hundereth euer ogaynes ane ;
 Þe Inglis men put þam to were 95
 Ful baldly, with bow and spere ;
 Þai slogh þare of þe galaies men
 Euer sixty ogaynes ten,
 Þat sum ligges ȝit in þat mire
 All heuidles, with owten hire, 100
 Þe Inglis men war armed wele
 Both in yren and in stele ;
 Þai faght ful fast both day and night
 Als lang als þam lasted might ;
 Bot galay men war so many 105
 Þat Inglis men wex all very :
 Help þai soght, bot þare come nane ; [f. 53 a².
 Þan vnto God þai made paire mane.
 Bot, sen þe time þat God was born
 Ne a hundreth ȝere biforn. 110

84. *mens*] *mennes* S.
wone and in next line *one* S.
mone S.

91. *ful* should be omitted.

93. *wane*]

107. *nane*] *none* and in next line

War neuer men better in fight
 þan Ingliss men, whils þai had myght.
 Bot sone all maistri gan þai mis.
 God bring þaire saules vntill his blis,
 And God assoyl þam of þaire sin 115
 For þe gude will þat þai war in. Amen.

Listens now, and leues me,
 Who so lifes þai sall se
 þat it mun be ful dere boght
 þat þir galay men haue wroght. 120
 þai houed still opon þe flode
 And reued pouer men þaire gude :
 þai robbed and did mekill schame,
 And ay bare Inglis men þe blame.
 Now Ihesus saue all Ingland 125
 And blis it with his haly hand. Amen.

IV

EDWARD oure cumly king
 In Braband has his woning,
 With mani cumly knight ;
 And in þat land, trewly to tell,
 Ordanis he still for to dwell, 5
 To time he think to fight.

Now God þat es of mightes maste
 Grant him grace of þe Haly Gaste

122. *gude*] *gode* S. 125. *Ihesus*] *ihc* MS. *Ingland*] *Ingeland* S.
 3. *cumly* is probably a mistaken repetition from the first line.
 5. *Ordanis*] *Ordaynes* S.

His heritage to win.
 And Mari moder, of mercy fre, 10
 Saue oure king and his menze
 Fro sorow, and schame and syn.

pus in Braband has he bene,
 Whare he bifore was seldom sene,
 For to proue paire iapes; 15
 Now no langer wil he spare,
 Bot vnto Fraunce fast will he fare,
 To confort him with grapes.

furth he ferd into France;
 God saue him fro mischance, 20
 And all his cumpany.
 þe nobill duc of Braband
 With him went into þat land,
 Redy to lif or dy.

þan þe riche floure de lice 25
 Wan þare ful litill prise;
 Fast he fled for ferde.
 þe right aire of þat cuntre
 Es cumen, with all his knightes fre: [f. 53 b¹.
 To schac him by þe berd. 30

Sir Philip þe Valayse,
 Wit his men in þo dayes,
 To batale had he thocht:
 He bad his men þam puruay,

12. R. omits the first *and*. 19. *ferd*] *fered* S. But *ferd* is practically dissyllabic. 20. *God*] *Iesus* S. 22. S. inserts *als* after *duc*. 25. *delice* in one word MS. 28. *right*] perhaps better *rightwis*, see vii. 113. 32. *in*] perhaps *into*, comp. Wyntoun, v. 3153. 34. The repetition of *his men* (after v. 32) is suspicious. S. reads *He bad þam þam puruay*: perhaps, *He bad his menze þam puruay*, see iv. 11, and Horst. Barb. ii. 179/176.

With owten lenger delay, 35
 Bot he ne held it noght.
 He broght folk ful grete wone,
 Ay seuyn oganis one,
 þat ful wele wapnid were :
 Bot sone whe[n] he herd ascry 40
 þat king Edward was nere þarby,
 þan durst he noght cum nere.
 In þat morn[ing] fell a myst,
 And when oure I[n]gliss men it wist,
 It changed all þaire chere ; 45
 Oure king vnto God made his bone,
 And God sent him gude confort sone,
 þe weder wax ful clere.
 Oure king and his men held þe felde
 Stalwortly, with spere and schelde, 50
 And thought to win his right,
 With lordes and with knightes kene
 And oþer doghty men bydene,
 þat war ful frek to fight.
 When 'sir' Philip of France herd tell 55
 þat king Edward in feld walld dwell,
 þan gayned him no gle ;
 He traisted of no better bote,
 Bot both on hors and on fote
 He hasted him to fle. 60

ON gayne.
 Note gayne from
 Fr. appears
 in C. 16.

35. *lenger*] *leng* S. 37. *broght*] *bcoght* MS. 40 *when*] So R. *whe*
 MS. 43. *morning*] *mornig* MS., perhaps a genuine form, see *murnig*,
 vii. 119; viii. 2; so also in this MS. *fagenig*, f. 28 a¹; *biginnig*, f. 50 b¹;
 and other words in *nig*. Comp., too, in other Northern pieces *murnig*,
 Horst. A. L. ii. 112/11; and *jernig*, id. 113/44; *jarnige*, Horst. Barb.
 i. 135/839, 153/916. 44. *Ingliss*] *iglist* MS. 45. *shanged* MS.
 50. *Stalwortly*] *Stalworthly* R. 56. *walld*] *wald* S. 57.
gayned] perhaps *gamed*, see note.

It semid he was ferd for strokes
 When he did sell his grete okes
 About his paulyoune;
 Abated was þan all his pride,
 For langer þare durst he noght bide, 65
 His bost was broght all doune.

þe king of Beme had cares colde,
 þat was ful hardy and bolde
 A stede to vmstride.
 [He and] þe king als of Nauerne 70
 War faire feld in þe ferene
 þaire heuiddes for to hide.

And leues wele it es no lye,
 þe felde hat flemangrye
 þat king Edward was in, 75
 With princes þat war stif ande bolde
 And dukes þat war doghty tolde [f. 53 b².
 In batayle to bigin.

þe princes þat war riche on raw
 Gert nakers strike, and trumpes blaw. 80
 And made mirth at þaire might
 Both alblast and many a bow
 War redy railed opon a row,
 And ful frek for to fight.

Gladly þai gaf mete and drink 85
 So þat þai suld þe better swink

68. *ful*] so R., *fur* MS. 69. S. inserts *for* after *stede*. 70. *He*
and supplied by R. 71. *feld in þe* are in smaller writing than
 the other words, as if they had been inserted afterwards. S. reads
felid: perhaps *War sain for fered in þe ferene*, see note. 74. *felde*
hat] *feld it hat* S. 79. *raw*] *row* and in next line *blow* S.

þe wight men þat þar ware.
 Sir Philip of Fraunce fled for dout,
 And hied him hame with all his rout :
 Coward, God giff him care.

90

ffor þare þan had þe lely flowre
 Lorn all halely his honowre,
 þat sogat fled for ferd :
 Bot oure king Edward come ful still,
 When þat he trowed no harm him till,
 And keped him in þe berde.

95

V

Lithes and þe batail I sal bigyn
 Of Inglish men & Normandes in þe Swyn.

MINOT with mowth had menid to make
 Suth sawes & sad for sum mens sake ;
 þe wordes of sir Edward makes me to wake,
 Wald he salue vs sone mi sorow suld slake ;
 War mi sorow slaked sune wald I sing :
 When God will sir Edward sal vs bute bring.

5

Sir Philip þe Valas cast was in care ;
 And said sir Hugh Kyret to Flandres suld fare,
 And haue Normondes inogh to leue on his lare,
 All Flandres to brin and mak it all bare ;
 Bot, vnkind coward, wo was him þare :
 When he sailed in þe Swin it sowed him sare ;
 Sare it þam smerted þat ferd out of ffrance ;
 þare lered Inglish men þam a new daunce.

10

2. mens] *mennes* S.

"pam"
 trans. a
 intrins;
 Nth a Sc.;
 nearly alone
 with sare.

see note.

þe buriase of Bruge ne war noght to blame ; 15
 I pray Ihesu saue þam fro sin and fro schame,
 For þai war sone at þe Sluse all by a name,
 Whare many of þe Normandes tok mekill grame.

When Bruges and Ipyre hereof herd tell,
 þai sent Edward to wit þat was in Arwell ; 20
 þan had he no liking langer to dwell,
 He hasted him to þe Swin with sergantes snell,
 To mete with þe No[r]mandes þat fals war & fell,
 þat had ment if þai might al Flandres to quell.

King Edward vnto sail was ful sune dight 25
 With erles and barons and many kene knight :
 þai come byfor Blankebergh on Saint Ions night ; [f. 54 a¹.
 þat was to þe Normondes a well sary sight.
 3it trumped þai and daunced with torches ful bright,
 In þe wilde waniand was þaire hertes light. 30

Opon þe morn efter, if I suth say,
 A meri man, sir Robard out of Morlay,
 At half eb in þe Swin soght he þe way ;
 þare lered men þe Normandes at bukler to play ;
 Helpid þam no prayer þat þai might pray ; 35
 þe wreches er wonnen, þaire wapin es oway.

þe Erle of Norhamton helpid at þat nede,
 Als wise man of wordes and worthli in wede,
 Sir Walter þe Mawnay, God gif him mede,
 Was bold of body in batayl to bede. 40

17. *aname* in one word MS. 22. *sergantes*] *seriāntes* S. 23.
Normandes] *Nomandes* MS. 36. *er*] so S. *es* MS., due probably
 to the following *es*. 37. *Norhamton*] *Norh^mton* (= *norhramton*)
 MS. 40. S. supplies *man* after *bold*; perhaps *burne*.

þe duc of Lankaster was dight for to driue,
 With mani mody man þat thocht for to thriue,
 Wele & stalworthly stint he þat striue,
 þat few of þe Normandes left þai oliue;
 Fone left þai oliue bot did þam to lepe;
 Men may find by þe flode a ·C· on hepe.

45

Sir Wiliam of Klington was eth for to know;
 Mani stout bachilere broght he on raw.
 It semid with þaire schoting als it war snaw;
 þe bost of þe Normandes broght þai ful law;
 þaire bost was abated and þaire mekil pride,
 Fer might þai noght fle bot þare bud þam bide.

50

þe gude Erle of Glowceter, God mot him glade,
 Broght many bold men with bowes ful brade;
 To biker with þe Normandes baldely þai bade
 And in middes þe flode did þam to wade;
 To wade war þo wretches casten in þe brim;
 þe kaitefs come out of France at lere þam to swim.

55

I prays Iohn Badding als one of þe best;
 Faire come he sayland out of þe suthwest,
 To proue of þa Normandes was he ful prest,
 Till he had foghten his fill he had neuer rest.

60

Iohn of Aile of þe Sluys with scheltron ful schene
 Was comen into Cagent, cantly and kene,
 Bot sone was his trumping turned to tene;
 Of him had sir Edward his will als I wene.

65

þe schipmen of Ingland sailed ful swith
 þat none of þe Normandes fro þam might skriþh.

46. .C.] *hundreth* S.54. *boldmen* in one word MS.67. *swith*] *swithe* and in the next lines *skrithe*, *kithe* S.

Who so kouth wele his craft þare might it kith:
Of al þe gude þat þai gat gaf þai no tithe. 70

Two hundreth and mo schippes on þe sandes
Had oure Inglis men won with þaire handes;
þe kogges of Ingland war broght out of bandes,
And also þe Cristofir þat in þe streme standes;
In þat stound þai stode, with stremers full still, [f. 54 a². 75
Til þai wist full wele sir Edwardes will.

Sir Edward, oure gude king wurthi in wall, *Sq. Low. Deg. 634*
Faght wele on þat flude, faire mot him fall;
Als it es custom of king to confort þam all
So thanked he gudely þe grete and þe small, 80
He thanked þam gudely, God gif him mede,
þus come oure king in þe Swin till þat gude dede.

þis was þe bataile þat fell in þe Swin,
Whare many No'r'mandes made mekill din;
Wele war þai armed vp to þe chin; 85
Bot God and sir Edward gert þaire boste blin,
þus blinned þaire boste, als we wele ken:
God assoyle þaire sawls, sais all, Amen.

VI

Herkins how king Edward lay
With his men bifer Tournay.

TOWRENAY, 3ow has tight
To timber trey and tene

74. also] als S.

1. Towrenay] Tournay S. Between the syllables bearing the principal and the secondary accent an *e* or *o* is often heard in conjunction with

A bore, with brenis bright
 Es broght opon 3owre grene :
 pat es a semely sight, 5
 With schilterouns faire and schene :
 pi domes day es dight,
 Bot pou be war, I wene.

When all yowre wele es went
 3owre wo wakkins ful wide, 10
 To sighing er 3e sent
 With sorow on ilka syde :
 Ful rewoffull es 3owre rent,
 All redles may 3e ride ;
 þe harmes þat 3e haue hent 15
 Now may 3e hele and hide.

Hides and helis als hende,
 For 3e er cast in care ;
 Ful few find 3e 3owre frende
 For all 3owre frankis fare. 20
 Sir Philip sall 3ow schende,
 Whi leue 3e at his lare ?
 No bowes now thar 3ow bende ;
 Of blis 3e er all bare.

r or *l*. In this MS. it is sometimes written where it must be slurred over in scansion, *Towrenay*, *ferene*, iv. 71 ; *semely*, vi. 5. In other places where the metre requires it it is not written, *Aremouth*, iii. 76 ; *Ingeland*, iii. 2. M.'s *Arwell* is Chaucer's *Orewelle*. Comp. also *coroun*, ix. 46, elsewhere *croun*. 3. *bore* only here and vii. 21, but *bare* sixteen times. 6. *schilterouns*] in v. 63 *scheltron* : the scribe has followed the analogy of Romance words like *resoun*, *soun*. 15. *harmes*] *harms* S. ; rather omit *þat*, *harmes* being dissyllabic here and in ii. 26, vi. 43. 16. *hele*] perhaps *holde*, and in 17 *holdis*, see note. 21. *sall* occurs sixteen times ; *sal* only at v. 6, vi. 33, viii. 19. 23. *No bowes er for 3ow bende* S.

All bare er 3e of blis, 25

No bost may be 3owre bote,

All mirthes mun 3e mis,

Oure men sall with 3ow mote,

Who sall 3ow clip and kys,

And fall 3owre folk to fote: 30

A were es wroght, i-wis,

3owre walles with to wrote.

Wrote pai sal 3owre dene, [f. 54 b¹.

Of dintes 3e may 3ow dowl;

3owre biginges sall men brene, 35

And breke 3owre walles about.

Ful redles may 3e ren,

With all 3owre rewfyl rout;

With care men sall 3ow ken

Edward 3owre lord to lout. 40

To lout 3ow[re] lord in land

With list men sall 3ow lere;

3owre harmes cumes at hand,

Als 3e sall hastily here.

Now frendschip suld 3e fande 45

Of sir Philip 3owre fere,

To bring 3ow out of band,

Or 3e be broght on bere.

On bere when 3e er broght,

pan cumes Philip to late, 50

He hetes, and haldes 3ow noght,

With hert 3e may him hate.

30. And] All S.

so R. 3ow MS.

times, and is invariably pan.

31. i-wis] I wis MS.

30. pan] pen S.; the word occurs sixteen

41. 3owre]

A bare now has him soght
 Till Turnay þe right gate,
 þat es ful wele bithoght 55
 To stop Philip þe strate,
 Ful still.

Philip was fain he moght
 Graunt sir Edward his will.

If ȝe will trow my tale, 60
 A duke tuke leue þat tide,
 A Braban brwed þat bale,
 He bad no langer bide ;

Giftes grete and smale
 War sent him on his side ; 65
 Gold gert all þat gale
 And made him rapely ride
 Till dede :

In hert he was vnhale ;
 He come þare moste for mede. 70

King Edward, frely fode,
 In Fraunce he will noght blin.
 To mak his famen wode
 þat er wonand þarein.

God, þat rest on rode 75

For sake of Adams syn,
 Strenkith him main & mode
 His reght in France to win
 And haue.

God grante him graces gode, 80
 And fro all sins vs saue. Amen.

54. *Till*] *Til* S. ; always *till* in MS. 56. In MS. *to stop philip*
þe strate : *ful still*, so also 67, 68, and 78, 79. 62. *brwed*] *brewd* S.
 67. *rapely*] *raply* S. 74. *þarein*] *pare* in MS. *þarin* S.

once appears in
 R. Branne first
 c. 1320.

see note.

App. info. in MS.

VII

How Edward at Hogges vnto land wan
And rade *thurgh* France or euer he blan.

MEN may rede in romance right [f. 54 b².
Of a grete clerk þat Merlin hight;
Ful many bokes er of him wreten,
Als þir clerkes wele may witten;
And ȝit in many priue nokes 5
May men find of Merlin bokes.
Merlin said þus with his mowth,
Out of þe north into þe sowth
Suld cum a bare ouer þe se
þat suld mak many man to fle; 10
And in þe se, he said ful right,
Suld he schew ful mekill might;
And in France he suld bigin
To make þam wrath þat er þarein;
Vntill þe se his taile reche sale 15
All folk of France to mekill bale.
þus haue I mater for to make,
For a nobill prince sake:
Help me, God, my wit es thin,
Now Laurence Minot will bigin. 20

A bore es broght on bankes bare
With ful batail bifor his brest;
For Iohn of France will he noght spare
In Normondy to tak his rest,

Title, l. 2. *thurgh*] *tlurgh* MS.

3. *wreten*] *writen*, and in next line *witen* S. 5, 6. *ȝit* seems to
mark these two lines as an interpolation of the scribe. 14. *wrath*]
wroth S. *þarein*] *þarin* S. 18. *prince*] *princes* S.; the *s* is
dropped because another *s* follows.

With princes þat er *proper* and *prest*: 25
 Alweldand God of mightes maste,
 He be his beld, for he mai best,
 Fader and Sun and Haly Gaste.

Haly Gaste, þou gif him grace,
 þat he in gude time may bigin, 30
 And send to him both might & space
 His heritage wele for to win;
 And sone assoyl him of his sin,
 Hende God, þat heried hell.

For France now es he entred in, 35
 And þare he dightes him for to dwell.

He dwelled þare, þe suth to tell,
 Opon þe coste of Normondy;
 At Hogges sand he famen fell
 þat war all ful of felony: 40

To him þai makked grete maistri,
 And proued to ger þe bare abyde;
 Thurgh might of God & mild Mari
 þe bare abated all þaire pride.

Mekill pride was þare in prese, 45
 Both on pencell and on plate,
 When þe bare rade, with outen rese,
 Vnto Cane þe graythest gate.

þare fand he folk bifor þe ȝate [f. 55 a¹.
 Thretty thowsand stif on stede: 50
 Sir Iohn of France come al to late,
 þe bare has gert þaire sides blede.

He gert [þam] blede if þai war bolde,
 For þare was slayne and wounded sore

Thretty thowsand, trewly tolde, 55
 Of pitaile was pare mekill more;
 Knightes war pare wele two score
 pat war new dubbed to pat dance,
 Helm and heuyd pai haue forlore:
 pan misliked Iohn of France. 60
 More misliking was pare pen,
 For fals treson alway pai wrought;
 Bot, fro pai met with Inglis men,
 All paire bargan dere pai boght.
 Inglis men with site pam soght 65
 And hastily quit pam paire hire;
 And at pe last forgat pai noght,
 pe toun of Cane pai sett on fire.
 pat fire ful many folk gan fere,
 When pai se brandes o-ferrum flye; 70
 pis haue pai wonen of pe were,
 pe fals folk of Normundy.
 I sai 3ow lely how pai lye
 Dongen doun all in a daunce;
 paire frendes may ful faire forpi 75
 Pleyn pam vntill Iohn of France.
 ffranche men put pam to pine
 At Cressy, when pai brak pe brig;
 pat saw Edward with both his ine,
 pan likid him no langer to lig. 80
 Ilk Inglis man on opers rig
 Ouer pat water er pai went;
 To batail er pai baldly big,
 With brade ax and with bowes bent.

61. *misliking*] *misliking* MS.65. *inglismen* in one word MS.70. *o ferrum* MS. and so in l. 89.71. *wonen*] *wonnen* S.72. *fals*]*false* S.80. *langer*] better read with S. *leng*.

With bent bowes þai war ful bolde 85
 For to fell of þe Frankisch men;
 Þai gert þam lig with cares colde;
 Ful sari was sir Philip þen.

He saw þe toun o-ferrum bren,
 And folk for ferd war fast fleand; 90
 Þe teres he lete ful rathly ren
 Out of his eghen, I vnderstand.

Þan come Philip ful redy dight
 Toward þe toun with all his rowt,
 With him come mani a kumly knight, 95
 And all vmset þe bare about.

Þe bare made þam ful law to lout, [f. 55 a².
 And delt þam knokkes to þaire mede;
 He gert þam stumbill þat war stout,
 Þare helpid nowþer staf ne stede. 100

Stedes strong bileuid still
 Biside Cressy opon þe grene;
 Sir Philip wanted all his will,
 Þat was wele on his sembland sene.
 With spere and schelde and helmis schene 105
 Þe bare þan durst þai noght habide:
 Þe king of Beme was cant and kene;
 Bot þare he left both play and pride.

Pride in prese ne prais I noght
 Omang þir princes prowde in pall; 110
 Princes suld be wele bithoght,
 When kinges þam t'll counsail call.

85. *bent bowes*] *bended bows* S. 112. *Kinges suld* MS.; *suld* is clearly due to the preceding line, as ten Brink points out in Scholle, p. 45. *till*] *tyll* R. *toll* MS.

If he be rightwis king, þai sall
 Maintene him both night and day,
 Or els to lat his frendschip fall 115
 On faire manere, and fare oway.

Oway es all þi wele, i-wis,
 Franche man, with all þi fare;
 Of murnig may þou neuer mys,
 For þou ert cumberd all in care: 120
 With speche ne moght þou neuer spare
 To speke of Ingliss men despite;
 Now haue þai made þi biging bare,
 Of all þi catell ertou quite.

Quite ertou, þat wele we know, 125
 Of catell and of drewris dere;
 Þarfore lies þi hert ful law,
 þat are was blith als brid on brere.
 Inglis men sall 3it to 3ere
 Knok þi palet or þou pas,
 And mak þe polled like a frere:
 And 3it es Ingland als it was. 130

*Freq. for (1) head-
nummours head.*

Was þou noght, Franceis, with þi wapin
 Bitwixen Cressy and Abuyle?
 Whare þi felaws lien and gapin, 135
 For all paire treget and paire gile.
 Bisschoppes war þare in þat while
 þat songen all withouten stole:
 Philip þe Valas was a file,
 He fled and durst noght tak his dole. 140

*Three instances
in WED.*

115. *els to] elles S.*

117. *i-wis] I wis MS.*

119. *murning]*

murnig MS., see iv. 43, note.

Men delid þare ful mani a dint
 Omang þe gentill Geneuayse ;
 Ful many man þaire liues tint
 For luf of Philip þe Valays.
 Vnkind he was and vncurtayse, [f. 55. b¹. 145
 I prais no thing his puruiance ;
 Þe best of France and of Artayse
 War al to-dongyn in þat daunce.

þat daunce with treson was bygun
 To trais þe bare with sum fals gyn : 150
 þe Franche men said, All es wun,
 Now es it tyme þat we bigin,
 For here es welth inogh to win,
 To make vs riche for euermore :
 Bot, thurgh þaire armure thik and thin 155
 Slaine þai war, and wounded sore.

Sore þan sighed sir Philip ;
 Now wist he neuer what him was best,
 For he es cast down with a trip :
 In Iohn of France es all his trest, 160
 For he was his frend faithfulest,
 In him was full his affiance :
 Bot sir Edward wald neuer rest,
 Or þai war feld þe best of France.

Of France was mekill wo, i-wis, 165
 And in Paris þa high palays :
 Now had þe bare with mekill blis
 Bigged him bifer Calais.

142. *Geneuayse*] *a* corrected out of *e* MS. 148. *to-dongyn*] *alto*
dongyn MS. 154. *euermore*] *evermare* ; and in 156, *sare* S. ; but see
 vii. 54, 57, 59. 160. *es*] *was* S. 165. *i-wis*] *I wis* MS. 166.
 þa] *the* R.

freq. from 1300.

see note.

Heres now how þe romance sais
 How sir Edward, oure king with croune, 170
 Held his sege bi nightes and dais
 With his men bifor Calays toune.

VIII. [VII b]

How Edward als þe romance sais
 Held his sege bifor Calais.

CALAYS men, now mai 3e care,
 And murni[n]g mun 3e haue to mede;
 Mirth on mold get 3e no mare;
 Sir Edward sall ken 3ow 3owre crede.
 Whilum war 3e wight in wede 5
 To robbing rathly for to ren;
 Mend 3ow sone of 3owre misdede;
 3owre care es cumen, will 3e it ken.
 Kend it es how 3e war kene
 Al Inglis men with dole to dere; 10
 Paire gudes toke 3e al bidene,
 No man born wald 3e forbere;
 3e spared noght with swerd ne spere
 To stik þam and paire gudes to stele;
 With wapin and with ded of were 15
 Þus haue 3e wonnen werldes wele.
 Weleful men war 3e, i-wis,
 Bot fer on fold sall 3e noght fare;
 A bare sal now abate 3owre blis [f. 55 b².
 And wirk 3ow bale on bankes bare; 20

2. *murning*] *murnig* MS.

11. *albidene* in one word MS.

17. *i-wis*] *I wis* MS.

He sall ȝow hunt als hund dose hare
 pat in no hole sall ȝe ȝow hide;
 For all ȝowre speche will he noght spare
 Bot bigges him right by ȝowre side.

Biside ȝow here þe bare bigins 25

To big his boure in winter tyde;
 And all bi tyme takes he his ines
 With semly se[r]gantes him biside.

þe word of him walkes ful wide;
 Ihesu saue him fro mischance. 30

In bataill dar he wele habide
 Sir Philip and sir Iohn of France.

þe Franche men er fers and fell
 And mase grete dray when þai er dight; = *deray*.

Of þam men herd slike tales tell 35

With Edward think þai for to fight,

Him for to hald out of his right
 And do him treson with þaire tales;

þat was þaire purpos day and night
 Bi counsail of þe Cardinales. 40

Cardinales with hattes rede

War fro Calays wele thre myle;
 þai toke þaire counsail in þat stede
 How þai might sir Edward bigile.

þai lended þare bot litill while 45

Till Franche men to grante þaire grace;

Sir Philip was funden a file,
 He fled and faght noght in þat place.

In þat place þe bare was blith,
 For all was funden þat he had soght: 50

Philip þe Valas fled ful swith
 With þe batail þat he had broght.
 For to haue Calays had he thoght
 All at his ledeing loud or still ;
 Bot all þaire wiles war for noght,
 Edward wan it at his will.

55

[VII c]

Lystens now, and ȝe may lere,
 Als men þe suth may vnderstand,
 Þe knightes þat in Calais were
 Come to sir Edward sare wepeand,
 In kirtell one and swerd in hand
 And cried, Sir Edward, þine [we] are,
 Do now, lord, bi law of land
 Þi will with vs for euermare.

60

Þe nobill burgase and þe best
 Come vnto him to haue þaire hire ;
 Þe comun puple war ful prest
 Rapes to bring about þaire swire :
 Þai said all, Sir Philip oure syre,
 And his sun, sir Iohn of France,
 Has left vs ligand in þe mire
 And broght vs till þis doleful dance.

65

[f. 56 a¹.

Oure horses þat war faire and fat
 Er etin vp ilkone bidene ;
 Haue we nowþer conig ne cat
 Þat þai ne er etin and hundes kene.
 All er etin vp ful clene,
 Es nowther leuid biche ne whelp,

75

62. *we* added by R., but the MS. is perhaps right.
þan said þai all, Philip oure syre.

69. Perhaps

þat es wele on oure sembland sene,
And þai er fled þat suld vs help. 80

A knight þat was of grete renowne,
Sir Iohn de Viene was his name,
He was wardaine of þe toune,
And had done Ingland mekill schame. 85
For all þaire boste þai er to blame,

Ful stalworthly þare haue þai streuyn;
A bare es cumen to mak þam tame,
Kayes of þe toun to him er gifen.
þe kaies er ȝolden him of þe ȝate,
Lat him now kepe þam if he kun; 90

To Calais cum þai all to late,
Sir Philip and sir Iohn his sun.
Al war ful ferd þat þare ware fun;
þaire leders may þai barely ban.
All on þis wise was Calais won; 95
God saue þam þat it so-gat wan.

possibly "or
without
qualification".
Mod. sense
first c. 1500

IX

Sir David had of his men grete loss
With sir Edward at þe Neuil cross.

Del. note; mod.
sense not much
before 1500

SIR Daud þe Bruse · was at distance,
When Edward þe Baliolfe · rade with his lance;
þe north end of Ingland · teched him to daunce,
When he was met on þe more · with mekill mischance.
Sir Philip þe Valayse · may him noght avance; 5
þe flowres þat faire war · er fallen in ffraunce,

86. *streuyn*] *striuyn* and in 88 *giuen* S. 96. *so-gat*] *so gat* MS.

IX. This poem and the next two are written in half lines in the MS.; the raised dot indicates the point of division.

þe floures er now fallen · þat fers war and fell ;
 A bare with his bataille · has done þam to dwell.

Sir Daud þe Bruse¹ · said he suld fonde ^{1[f. 56 a²]}
 To ride thurgh all Ingland, · wald he noght wonde ; 10
 At þe Westminster hall · suld his stedes stonde,
 Whils oure king Edward · war out of þe londe :
 Bot now has sir Daud · missed of his merkes
 And Philip þe Valays · with all þaire grete clerkes.

Sir Philip þe Valais, · suth for to say, 15
 Sent vnto sir Daud · and faire gan him pray
 At ride thurgh Ingland · þaire fomen to flay,
 And said none es at home · to let hym þe way,
 None letes him þe way · to wende whore he will :
 Bot with schipherd staues · fand he his fill. 20

fro Philip þe Valais · was sir Daud sent
 All Ingland to win · fro Twede vnto Trent ;
 He broght mani berebag · with bow redy bent ;
 þai robbed and þai reued · and held þat þai hent ;
 It was in þe waniand · þat þai furth went ; 25
 For couaitise of cataile · þo schrewes war schent ;
 Schent war þo schrewes · and ailed vnsele,
 For at þe Neuil cros · nedes bud þam knele.

At þe ersbisschop of ȝork · now will I bigyn,
 For he may with his right hand · assoyl vs of syn ; 30
 Both Dorem and Carlele · þai wald neuer blin
 þe wirschip of Ingland · with wappen to win ; ^{1[f. 56 b¹]}
 Mekill wirschip þai wan¹ · and wele haue þai waken,
 For syr Daud þe Bruse · was in þat tyme taken.

11. *Westminster*] *west minster* MS.

12. Perhaps *Whils*

Edward oure king.

17. *fomen*] *fo men* MS. *flay*] *slay* R.

19. *whore*] *whare* S.

When sir Dauid þe Bruse · satt on his stede, 35
 He said of all Ingland · haued he no drede;
 Bot hinde Iohn of Coupland, · a wight man in wede,
 Talked to Dauid ⁊ and kend him his crede.
 Þare was sir Dauid · so dughty in his dede,
 Þe faire toure of Londen · haued he to mede. 40

Sone þan was sir Dauid · broght vnto þe toure,
 And William þe Dowglas · with men of honowre;
 Full swith redy seruis · fand þai þare a schowre,
 For first þai drank of þe swete · and seþin of þe sowre.

þan sir Dauid þe Bruse · makes his mone, 45
 Þe faire coroun of Scotland · haues he forgone;
 He loked furth into France, · help had he none
 Of sir Philip þe Valais · ne 3it of sir Iohn.

þe pride of sir Dauid · bigon fast to slaken;
 For he wakkind þe were · þat held him self waken; 50
 For Philyp þe Valaise · had he [his] brede baken,
 And in þe toure of Londen · his ines er taken:
 To be both in a place · þaire forward þai nomen,
 Bot Philip fayled þare · and Dauid es cumen.

Sir Dauid þe Bruse · on þis manere 55
 Said vnto sir Philip · al þir sawes þus sere:
 Philip þe Valais, · þou made me be here,
 þis es noght þe forward¹ · we made are to 3ere; ¹[f. 56 b².
 ffals es þi forward · and euyll mot þou fare,
 For þou and sir Iohn þi son · haues kast me in care. 60

38. In one line in MS. Perhaps *Talked to sir Dauid*. 44. *seþin*] *seuin*, or *senin* MS.; but the latter, adopted by R., has no support.

49. Perhaps *bigon fast for to slaken*. 51. *his* not in MS., see note.

53. *nomen*] *numen* S.; perhaps *þaire forward had þai numen*. 60. *þi son* seems superfluous.

þe Scottes, with þaire falshede, · þus went þai about
 For to win Ingland · whils Edward was out.
 For Cuthbert of Dorem · haued þai no dout;
 þarfore at Neucl cros · law gan þai lout,
 þaire louted þai law · and leued allane: 65
 þus was Dauid þe Bruse · into þe toure tane.

X

How King Edward & his menþe
 Met with þe Spaniardes in þe see.

I WALD noght spare for to speke, · wist I to spede
 Of wight men with wapin · and worthly in wede,
 þat now er driuen to dale · and ded all þaire dede,
 þai sail in þe see-gronde · fissches to fede;
 Fele fissches þai fede · for all þaire grete fare, 5
 It was in þe waniand · þat þai come þare.

þai sailed furth in þe Swin · in a somers tyde,
 With trompes and taburns · and mekill oþer pride;
 þe word of þo weremen · walked full wide;
 þe gudes þat þai robbed · in holl gan þai it hide, 10
 In holl þan þai hided · grete welthes, als I wene,
 Of gold and of siluer · of skarlet and grene.

When þai sailed westward, · þo wight men in were,
 þaire hurdis, þaire ankers · hanged þai on here;
 Wight men of þe west¹ · neghed þam nerr. ¹[f. 57 a¹. 15
 And gert þam snaper in þe snare, · might þai no ferr,

64. S. inserts *þe* before *Neuel*.

4. *see-gronde*] *see gronde* MS.

corrected by R. 10. *it* is omitted by R.

ferr] *werre, herre, nerre, ferre*, S.

16. S. adds *flit* from following line before *might*.

9. *weremen*] *werkmen* MS.; cor-

13-16. *were, here, nerr,*

14. S. inserts *and* after *hurdis*.

snapper
 "stumble
 "make
 stumble
 chiefly
 Mh.

ffer might þai noght flit · bot þare most þai fine,
And þat þai bifore reued · þan most þai tyne.

Boy with þi blac berd, · I rede þat þo[u] blin,
And sone set þe to schriue · with sorow of þi syn ; 20
If þou were on Ingland · noght saltou win,

Cum þou more on þat coste · þi bale sall bigin :
þare kindels þi care · kene men sall þe kepe,
And do þe dye on a day · and domp in þe depe.

þe broght out of Bretayne · þowre custom with care, 25
þe met with þe marchandes · and made þam ful bare ;

It es gude reson and right · þat þe euill misfare,
When þe wald in Ingland · lere of a new lare,

New lare sall þe lere, · sir Edward to lout :
For when þe stode in þowre strenkith · þe war all to
stout. 30

XI

How gentill sir Edward with his grete engines
Wan with his wight men þe castell of Gynes.

WAR þis winter oway · wele wald I wene
þat somer suld schew him · in schawes ful schene :
Both þe lely and þe lipard · suld geder on a grene.
Mari, haue minde of þi man, · þou whote wham I mene
Lady, think what I mene, · I mak þe my mone 5
þou wreke gude king Edward · on wikked syr John.

18. *þai bifore*] *bifore þai* S. ; with either reading the rhythm is faulty ;
perhaps, *þat þai had bifore reued* · 19. *þou*] *þo* or *yo* MS. 21.
on] *opon* would mend the rhythm. 27. *It es resoun and right þat*
þe euil fare S. *gude* is superfluous, but *misfare* seems necessary to the
rhythm. 30. *strenkith*] *strenkth* S. ; for the adj. of the longer form
comp. ' *he es a strenkithi swayn*, ' MS. f. 64 a². *allto* in one word MS.

2. *þat* is suspicious, see note.
at f. 25 a².

4. *whote*] *wote* S. *whyfe* occurs

Of Gynes ful gladly · now will I bigin, ¹[f. 57 a².
 We wote wele þat woning¹ · was wikked for to win :
 Crist, þat swelt on þe rode · for sake of mans syn,
 Hald þam in gude hele · þat now er þarein, 10
 Inglis men er þarein · þe kastell to kepe;
 And Iohn of France es so wroth · for wo will he
 wepe.

Gentill Iohn of Doncaster · did a ful balde dede,
 When he come toward Gines · to ken þam þaire crede;
 He stirt vnto þe kastell · with owten any stede; 15
 Of folk þat he fand þare · haued he no drede,
 Dred in hert had he none · of all he fand þare :
 Faine war þai to fle · for all þaire grete fare.

A letherin ledderr · and a lang line,
 A small bote was þarby · þat put þam fro pine; 20
 þe folk þat þai fand þare · was faine for to fyne;
 Sone þaire diner was dight; and þare wald þai dine,
 þare was þaire purpose · to dine and to dwell,
 For treson of þe Franche men · þat fals war and fell.

Say now, sir Iohn of France · how saltou fare? 25
 þat both Calays and Gynes · has kindeld þi care;
 If þou be man of mekil might · lepe up on þi mare,
 Take þi gate vnto Gines · and grete þam wele þare,
 þare gretes þi gestes; and wendes with wo.
 King Edward has wonen · þe kastell þam fro. 30

þe men of Saint Omers; trus þe þis tide,
 And puttes out þowre pauiliownes¹ · with þowre mekill
 pride; ¹[f. 57 b¹.

10. *þare* in MS.11. *þare* in MS.13. S. omits *ful*.30. *wonen*] *wonnen* S. *þam* is difficult; perhaps *þe*.

Sendes efter sir Iohn of Fraunce · to stand by ȝowre syde,
 A bōre es boun ȝow to biker · þat wele dar habyde,
 Wele dar he habide · bataile to bede, 35
 And of ȝowre sir Iohn of Fraunce · haues he no drede.

God saue sir Edward his right · in euer ilka nede,
 And he þat will noght so · euil mot he spede;
 And len oure sir Edward · his life wele to lede,
 þat he may at his ending · haue heuin till his mede. 40

A M E N.

33. S. omits *sir*. 36. *sir* is superfluous. *haues*] *haueues* MS.
 37. S. omits *his right*; it is perhaps preferable to read *God saue Edward his right*.

NOTES

I.

Halidon Hill.

IT was stipulated by the treaty of Northampton in 1328 that the forfeited estates of English barons in Scotland should be restored to their former owners. The discontent which arose from the failure of the Scotch to carry out this arrangement found a pretext for action in Edward Balliol's claim to the throne of Scotland, and the expedition of the Disinherited Lords in 1332 was the result. On the last day of July in that year, Edward Balliol with a small force sailed from Ravenspur in Yorkshire, and after a difficult passage reached Kinghorn in Fife on the 6th of August. Before they could land their horses they were attacked by the Earl of Fife with 24,000 men. They defeated the Scots and reached Dunfermline on the next day, where they rested for two days. They then marched to the river Earn, on the opposite bank of which they found the forces of the Earl of Mar, whose support they had counted on. But he was now prepared to resist them, and the English, threatened by a large force in their rear, forded the river in the night and fell on the Scotch foot in their tents, killing a large number of them. Meanwhile the cavalry who were guarding the bridges gathered and attacked Balliol's army, but they were completely routed at Gaskmoor or Dupplin Moor, with the loss of Mar, Menteith, Carrick, and others. The English then occupied and fortified Perth, where they were besieged by the rallied fugitives of Dupplin and others under Archibald Douglas, Earl of Dunbar. In the meantime John Crab, 'pirata crudelissimus,' came with ten well-appointed Flemish ships from Berwick to attack the English vessels at Dundee, but he was defeated and his ships taken or destroyed (Rot. Scacc. Scot. i. p. cxlii; Knighton, i. p. 464). Thereupon the siege of Perth was raised, and the principal Scotch leaders having submitted, Balliol was crowned King of Scotland on the 24th of September. The adherents of David rising against him were defeated at Roxburgh bridge. The false security produced by the defeat of this attempt led Edward Balliol to dismiss most of his English forces, and he was himself expelled by a sudden

rising at Annan under the Earl of Moray and Archibald Douglas on Dec. 13, 1332 (see ll. 41-44). With Edward the Third's permission he raised 10,000 men in England and laid siege to Berwick on March 12, 1333. The Scots, hoping to draw him off, invaded England on the 23rd of March, but they were defeated two days after by Antony de Lucy, who captured William Douglas, the leader of the expedition, and recovered much booty. After Easter, Edward the Third arrived before Berwick. The Scots in the town, being hard pressed, procured a truce on condition of giving up the place if it were not relieved within fifteen days. An attempt to relieve the town failed, and the garrison still holding out after the stipulated time, one of their hostages was hanged before the eyes of the besieged. The Scots again tried to divert Edward from the siege, but they burnt Tweedmouth and besieged Queen Philippa in the strong fortress of Bamborough to no purpose. The men of Berwick then offered to give up the town by the following Monday if the Scots failed to relieve it by throwing into it a force of two hundred men with the loss of less than ten of their number. In the attempt to accomplish this the battle of Halidon Hill was fought, on Monday, July 19, 1333. (*Gesta Edwardi Terti in Chronicles of Edw. I and Edw. II, Rolls Series. Knighton. Walsingham. Rot. Scacc. Scot. vol. i.*)

Bierbaum (p. 13) thinks that the first two songs were written not earlier than 1339 or 1340. He sees in l. 23 a reference to the retreat of the French at Flamengerie in 1339. But as this isolates the line, which clearly refers to the ships of l. 19, he offers as an alternative argument that there is no record of French vessels coming to the help of Scotland till 1338. But the reference in the stanza is clearly to the event recorded by Nangis and quoted in the note on l. 19. He further relies on Mätzner's suggestion that l. 66, and ii. l. 24, refer to the burning of Dundee in 1335. But it is just as satisfactorily explained by the fact that in 1334 all Scotland, with the exception of three or four strongholds, was in the hands of the English; or it may be regarded as an allusion to the defeat of Crab's expedition before Dundee. Besides, the Earl of Moray was captured in 1335 by William of Prestfen, the Warden of Jedburgh (Hemingburgh, ii. p. 311); and the poet would hardly have failed to rejoice at this when mentioning his success at Annan in 1332 (ll. 41-44). There is then nothing in the poems against the natural assumption that they were written immediately after Halidon Hill. The allusion in l. 83 to the king's speech appeals to the still fresh recollection of the poet's hearers.

As in vii and the first sections of vi and viii, an emphatic word of the last line of each stanza is repeated in the first line of the next. This linking also occurs in the Awntyrs of Arthure, and between the last long

line and the first short one in each verse of Sayne John, printed in Horstmann, A. L., ii. p. 467, and in Religious Pieces, E. E. T. S. no. 26, p. 87. The opening lines of a Hymn at p. 75 of the latter collection may be quoted here for their striking resemblance to the first stanza of this poem. 'Fadir and Sone and Haly Gaste, | Lorde to þe I make my mone, | Stedfaste kyng of myghtes maste, | Alleweldand Gode sittand in trone, | I praye þe Lorde, þat þou þe haste | To forgyffe þat I hafe mysdone.' The half verse at the end by way of epilogue is noteworthy.

Another poem on Halidon Hill is quoted in Ritson's notes from MS. Harl. 4690. It is reprinted in the Appendix, piece i.

1. in trone. For the preposition comp. 'And thankyd god, that syts in trone,' Erl of Tolous, 461.

4. bute of all my bale, a very common alliterative formula. Comp. 'This is boyte of our baylle | good holsom ayлле,' Towneley Plays, 108/247; 'Mi bale þou fond to bet,' Sir Tristrem, 3307; 'She is the bote of all my bale,' Skelton, i. 293/2096; 'A blicht (? blitht) blenk of hir vesage bair | Of baill his bute mycht be,' Laing, Ancient Scot. Poetry, 224/59; Cursor, 105, 4766, 14415, 23951; Sir Amadace xvii; Sir Isumbras, 774; Amis, 2352; and Mätz. under *beten* and *bot*.

8, 9. in þis dale, on this earth, this vale of misery: Hampole's 'dym dulful dale | þat es ful of sorow and bale,' 1166, 7. Comp. also 'ðan man hem telled soðe tale | Of blisses dune, of sorwes dale,' Gen. and Ex. 17, 19.

9. droupe and dare, a Northern alliterative formula. Comp. 'I drope, I dare, for seyng of sight | That I can se,' Towneley Plays, 316/336, 267/309; 'He may droupe and dare | þat schal his troupe tyne,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 205/111, 2, 178/387; Le Bone Florence, 92, 3; Morte Arthure, 4007; Rel. Ant. i. p. 78, ii. p. 9; Wright, P. Poems, i. 250. The derivative *droupnen* is also found; 'for hire loue y droupne ant dare,' Böddeker, 171/80, and beside it are variant forms *drouknen*, with *kn* for *pn*, and *drouken*: see Björkmann, Scandinavian Loan-words, 177 n. Comp. 'Als i lay in a winteris nyt, | In a droukening bifer þe day,' thirteenth-century version of the dispute between the body and the soul, with 'Als y lay in a winters nist, | In a droupening bifer þe day,' of fourteenth century; Erlanger Beiträge, i. pp. 24, 25. So also in Promptorium Parvulorum, p. 113, 'DARYNGE, or drowpyng (droukyng, H.: droukinge, P.) Latitatio.' Instead of *droupe*, *durk*, to lie in the dark, sometimes appears; comp. 'I durk, I dare,' York Plays, 141/105; 'That the dere dwellys | And darkys and darys. | Alle darkis the dere and to down schowys | And for the dowte of the dede drowpys the daa,' Awntyrs of Arthure, 50-53, where Robson's text has 'Thay droupun and daren | Alle dyrkyns the dere,' Anturs of

A., iv, v; 'In hope i durk and dare,' Cursor, 25444. In Towneley Plays, 163/83, 'Alas! I lurk and dare,' the scribe has probably got rid of the obsolescent form. Dare in this combination usually means, to lurk, to lie hid in fear of something, as in the quotations from Prompt. Parv. above, and in 'þær þa wiðer-sacan inne dariað behydde,' Ælf., Lives of Saints, i. 506/322, the earliest occurrence of the word, but the derived sense, to be dismayed, to lose heart, is required here: comp. 'we dared for drede and durst noght luke,' Harrowing, 799.

10. **dern**, secret, deceitful, is possibly a copyist's mistake for *derue*, terrible, injurious. The two words are frequently confused, and the same alteration improves Genesis and Exodus, 1950. So in the Bestiary, 284, Morris has *derue*, Mätzner *derne*, and the words alternate in the versions of Cursor, 19712. Comp. for the combination, 'þat derf o ded, þat fals traitur,' Cursor, 12936; Horstmann, A. L., ii. 469/125.

12. **founded first**. See *fand* and *founded* in Glossary. The scribe uses both forms in the sense, to try, elsewhere, 'he fanded fast the childe to styng,' Seven Sages, 829; in Ywain, 1495, *founde* rhymes with *stownde*. We should at first expect *fast* here, from the frequency of such passages as 'For fast i fund to fare,' Cursor, 25441; 'The fend of helle fondyd fast,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 330/73; 'To fynde a forþe faste con I fonde,' The Pearl, 150; 'ffownde the fast to fare,' Towneley Plays, 160/4; York Plays, 430/123; W. of Palerne, 1682; Bruce, i. 42; Sir Perceval, 463; St. Marherete, 30/205. But *first* may refer to the indecisive campaign of Edward in 1327.

13. **frek to fare**. Comp. 'ffor to fare to þere ffoos with a ffryke wille,' Troy Book, 1050, 10599, the only examples of this combination I have noted. *Fresch* is also found as a variant of *frek* in this phrase; comp. 'Nis no so fresch on fote to fare,' E. E. Poems, 134/49. See also iv. 54 and note.

14. **with sides sare**, a phrase which often occurs in the romances. Comp. 'And made þere many a sore syde,' Octavian, 144/1340; 'The prynce of Aragon in they barr | With litull worshipp and sydes sare,' Torrent of Portyngale, 1182, 3; 'Ys siden were sore | le sang de ly cora,' Böddeker, Alteng. Dichtungen, 221/33; 'Sides þai made blo & wan,' Horn Childe, 76; 'Mani sides schuld be bibled,' id. 874; Sir Degrevant, 1328; 'þan schold y make hure sydes blede,' Sir Ferumbras, 5401, and see vii. 52.

16. **noght worth a pere**. The same comparison in Laud Troy Book, 1928; Sir Ferumbras, 5721; Le Bone Florence, 657; and Rowland and Otuell, 815, 'his armours ne vaylede noghte a pere.' So, 'noghte worthe a pye,' id. 1157; 'noghte worthe ane aye,' id. 222; and in 24 below, 'noght wurth a flye,' with which comp. 'He harmed him nouȝt worth a thong,' Laud Troy Book, 1469; 'Your frantick fable not

worth a fly,' Skelton, i. 185/104. Comp. also Richard the Redeles, prologue, l. 73, and note.

17. A pear is more in value sometimes.

18. Normondye, see v. 9, note.

19. 'Hoc anno (1333) decem naves, munitae armis et victualibus a rege Franciae Philippo in auxilium Scotorum in civitate de Bervic per gentes regis Angliae obsessorum missae sunt, sed vento impellente contrario, ad portum optatum pervenire non valentes, portui de Sclusa in partibus Flandriae appulerunt et ibi venditis omnibus imo quasi dissipatis, parvum aut nullum effectum habuerunt,' Nangis, avec les continuations, ed. Géraud, ii. p. 139. *on ilka syde* frequently fills up a verse without adding anything to the meaning. Comp. vi. 12; '& hastili he sent þat tide | *efter* his neghburs on ilka side,' Seven Sages, 1237; also with same rhyme id. 867, 1048; 'þai tald mi banes in ilka side,' E. E. Psalter (Surtees Soc., xvi), p. 63; Hampole, 391, and ten other places; Horstmann, A. L., ii. 96/300, &c.; Richard, 5129, 5198; Ywain, 808, 923. For the Southern equivalent of the phrase, comp. 'Both knights and barans him behelde | How comely he was on eche side,' Knight of Curtesy, 340.

21. *es nocht at hide*, is frequently used by the romance writers to fill up a line. The fuller phrase is in Horn Childe, 57, 'In herd is nouȝt to hide,' a variant of which 'In herte is noȝte for to layne,' Sir Perceval, 143, possibly suggested the beginning of this line. See Sir Tristrem, 166, note.

23. *dede habide*. Possibly the scribe has substituted *dede* for *dint* under the influence of l. 26. Comp. 'Na Sotheroun was that mycht thair dynt abid,' Wallace, vii. 1014, and see vii. 106.

24. *fare*. See vi. 20, note.

26. The same alliterative combination occurs with many variations. Comp. 'When ho schulde on the rode dye | The stones þat undur þe tempull lye | They flowen for dowe of hys dede,' The 15 tokens, 231-3 (Anglia, iii. p. 539); 'And for the dowte of the dede drowpys the daa,' Awntyrs of Arthure, 53; Richard Coer de Lion, 3033; 'For dout of ded thar sall nane fle,' Bruce, xii. 488; 'As for ded of the dynt, dressit of þe fild,' Troy Book, 7517, 7524.

28. *Ay whils*, although, but usually it means, as long as, until, as in 'Yis, sir, he sayd, at my power | Ay whils I [may] my armes bere,' Seven Sages, 3318; Hampole, 3238. Its use is mostly Northern.

29. Mätzner explains *mend*, moaned, complained, a meaning which will not satisfy this place. In 'And at my might I will it mend,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 113/111; Ywain, 2204, it means 'amend,' which is also inadmissible here. It must be taken as aphetic for demeaned = behaved, as in 'But william whizes þat wistly of-seiȝyen, | & demened

hem douȝtli · dintes te dele,' William of Palerne, 1221, 2. Comp. 'And mene vs with monhode maistry to wyn,' Troy Book, 2785 and 2773. So in 'and many oþer þat stode him by | and saw þis selkuth sight | knocked on þaire brestes & cried mercy | and mendid þam at þaire might | of þis wonderful dede,' Harrowing, 680, *mendid* is almost certainly a mistake for *menid* in 'this sense. Seruit = deserved, is common; see glossary to Piers Plowman, E. E. T. S., no 81, and Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 112/414, and cert = desert, id. i. 188/806. at **paire might**, to the best of their ability. Comp. for the preposition, 'And þe lord þat þat beist aght | Sal þar-for ansuer at his maght,' Cursor, 6720; Rowland and Otuell, 1176.

30. **besy þareabout**. Comp. 'þai var richt besy ay aboute | To fynd sume get hyme to grewe,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 131/824, 5. *About* is used alone to express the same meaning, so, 'To seint Austin he was deuout | To rede his bokus he was about,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 87/1477, 8, 12/243, 16/527, 67/344; 'Satan is ȝeorne abuten uorto ridlen þe ut of mine corne,' Ancren Riwe, 234/15 (= *expetivit*); 'þat were abouten him to dere,' A. & M. 15/430; Laȝamon, 12563; Ratis Raving, 58/1137.

37. **now** may refer to the failure of the Scotch forays into England mentioned in the introduction, but it has probably no special force.

39. **dareand all for drede**. Comp. note on i. 9, and add, 'For al dares for drede, withoute dynt schewed,' Gawayne, 315.

41, 42. They set great store by the Earl of Moray and many others. John Randolph (second son of Thomas Randolph who was proclaimed Regent in 1332 and died in the same year) was the leader of the sudden rising at Annan on Dec. 13, 1332, which forced Edward Balliol to fly. Gesta Edwardi Terti, p. 110.

43. They said the English adventurers would pay very dearly for having expelled them from their country. Comp. for this phrase, 'Hit schal beo ful deore abought,' Alisaunder, 4154; 'And said it suld ful dere be boght,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 107/142; Cursor, 822; 'And swoir it suld be full deir sald,' Lyndesay, Sqvyer Meldrum, 351/1069, 'Full dere it mond be solde,' Sir Eglamour, 81.

45. **wordes wroght**. See ii. 33, and for the alliteration comp. 'þai ditted þaire eris, for þai suld noght | Here þir wurdes þat þus war wroght,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 30/147, 8.

48. Comp. 'He wold us mar and we were mo,' Towneley Plays, 300/224; York Plays, 384/208.

49. A common formula in the romances. Comp. 'Sic manassing thay me mak, forsuith, ilk ȝeir,' Rauf Coilȝear (Laing) 200; Horstmann, A. L., ii. 467/34.

50. **Mawgre** is here a noun, what is displeasing, misfortune. For the

alliteration, comp. 'And 3eue hem myche maugre to mede | þat ony good þee wolde kenne,' Hymns to the Virgin, 65/215, 6; 'mekil mawgre mot þou haue,' Seven Sages, 1071; Cursor, 21471; Sir Ferumbras, 618, 2577; Sir Tristrem, 2017.

54. **stout on stede.** See note on vii. 50.

55. **Naked** is illustrated by Barbour's Bruce, xiii. 459-62 (of Bannockburn): 'And quhen thai nakit spulȝeit war | That war slayȝe in the battale thar, | It wes forsuth a gret ferly | Till se sammyn so feill dede ly.'

59. See ii. 11, note.

60. The 'wild Scots' are the Gaelic population of the North and West (Le Bel's 'La sauvage Escoce,' i. p. 117), the 'tame Scots' the English-speaking Lowlanders. But these adjectives sometimes merely fill up a line, 'Of Israel, both wyld and tame, | I haue in my bondon,' Towneley Plays, 59/101; Horstmann, A. L., i. 38/235.

64. **wait**, to look out for an opportunity to harm, and hence, to injure. Comp. 'That never he shold be nyght ne day | Wayte kyng Ermyn with treason,' Beues of Hamtoun, 50/826, 7; 'Sythene hafe I ever bene his fo | For to wayte him with wo,' Sir Perceval, 558; Cursor, 899; Erl of Tolous, 299, 683; 'Ure eldre waiteden him to deaðe,' O.E. Homilies, ii. 43/35. It is also constructed with a double accusative as in 'Neewe gilours wolde waite us schame,' Hymns to the Virgin, 44/101; 'ȝit schalle thai never wayt Ingland good,' Wright, P. Poems, ii. p. 127; 'Ne fro this tyme furth waite him no shame,' Generides, 6091; 'þai schuld him neuer waite loþ,' A. & M. 13/352. But Ekwall, Archiv, cxx. 428, thinks this a different word derived from O.W.Scand. *veita*, to inflict.

66. Ritson has a curious idea that, as Edward Balliol's fleet was at Dundee when he won the battle of Dupplin, this line may refer to the latter event. But see the introduction. Already in 1332 at that place ships had been allowed to depart without paying customs to the Scotch Exchequer on account of the war, and in 1334 the accounts of the chamberlain Reginald More are a blank, 'Et nihil hic de vno anno tempore regis Anglie quia ministri sui ad opus suum et ad opus Edwardi de Balliolc se totaliter de eodem anno intromiserunt,' Rot. Scacc. Scot., i. p. 448. For *daunce*, see vii. 58.

71. A turn of expression frequent in the romances. Comp. 'And liste no thyng of playe,' Sege off Melayne, 1254; "'Sitte downe, fole," the mayd gan saye, | "Vs list to speke of no pleye,"' Ipomydon, 1695, 6; Na creatur sal þan list plai,' Cursor, 22601; Chaucer, Kn. Tale, 269.

74. A fuller alliteration is found in Cursor, 9030, 'þat bath ar funden fals and fell.'

77. John Comyn of Badenoch was murdered in the church of the

Minorites at Dumfries on Feb. 10, 1306. 'Quo (Comyn) reperto coram magno altari in ecclesia fratrum dicti loci de Drumfres dictus Robertus de Broys . . . eundem protenus letali vulnere jugulavit. Ac ipso relicto et in vestibulum retro altari per conventum ejusdem ecclesiae retracto . . .' *Annals of Pluscarden*, i. p. 229. *Hid* may find an explanation in the latter sentence, but it is more likely due to the needs of the rhyme and alliteration: it is then much the same as *pwte away* in 'Swagert he all apon a day | Be slayne to dede and pwte awaye | The Denmarkys,' *Wyntoun*, vi. 1557-9.

80. For the alliteration comp. 'pat þus with dole to dede es dyghte,' *Sege off Melayne*, 557; 'And myche dole is vs dight to-day as I wene,' *Troy Book*, 9558; 'With doole haue þei dight hym to dede,' *York Plays*, 426/7. If the line as it stands is right, it must mean, are appointed that they must dwell with sorrow. But *pat* is, at least, suspicious; we should probably read *þar* here, as in *Castel off Loue*, 56, with the meaning, where, in which. Comp. 'Swa es þe worlde here þar we duelle,' *Hampole*, 1241; 'That barne brynge vs to blysse þare beste es to byde,' *Horstmann*, A. L., ii. 467/8; 'And went whare God hyr dight to dwell,' *Seven Sages*, 19.

81. *pare*, before *Berwick*. *þe suth to saine*, an assurance of the poet's truthfulness after the manner of the romance writers. Other formulae of the same kind are, 'es noght at hide,' i. 21; 'leues wele it es no lye,' iv. 73; 'if I suth say,' v. 31; 'þe suth to tell,' vii. 37; 'I sai þow lely,' vii. 73; 'Als men þe suth may vnderstand,' viii. 58; 'suth for to say,' ix. 15.

83. Comp. v. 79, 80; 'rege Anglorum suos sapienter atque decenti hilaritate confortante,' *Le Baker*, p. 51. The king's speech to his troops before the battle is reported in the *Gesta Edwardi Tertii*, p. 115. 'Ascenso itaque dextrario, dominus rex suos verbis affabilibus animavit, "Considerate, commilitones mei, cum quibus gentibus dimicaturi sumus isto die. Diu est quod progenitoribus nostris rebelles extiterunt. Piget itaque referre plebis et religiosorum subversiones et strages quas nostro generi pluries intulerunt. Jam, Deo propitio, dies instat ultionis, nec illorum multitudinem timeatis, quia de Domini praesidio confidentes vobiscum pares erimus in conflictu."' on *pat plaine*. The battle of Halidon Hill was fought on rugged, hilly ground. Probably *plain* is used quite generally as we should talk of a battle-field in such a case: so, 'þey assemblyd on a playn, | Besyde Acres, on a mountayn,' *Richard*, 2971, 2. But we may have here a scribe's alteration of *into playn* used as in 'Thar leyff thai tuk with conforde into playn,' *Wallace*, iii. 335, where the phrase means in plain (for into = in, comp. 'Hys newo in tyll ire he slewe,' *Wyntoun*, ii. 1262) plainly, beyond doubt, and helps to fill up the line.

84. **about a myle**, for the time it takes to go a mile. See Guy of Warwick, 2810, note, and add to the examples collected there, 'þer inne heo runden. | ane lutle while.' ne leaste hit na wiht ane mile,' *Lazamon*, 5817-9; 'He had not slepyd but a while | Not the space of a myle,' *Ipomydon*, 1465, 6; 'Than thai mellit on mold ane myle way and mare,' *Golagrus*, 1119 (*Anglia*, ii. p. 435); 'Nadde Arthour bot a while | The mountance of a mile, | At his table ysete,' *Libeaus* 115-7 and 1088; *Cursor*, 22458; *Hampole*, 1419; *A. & M.* 16/5705, 6; 'Et furent ensi entr'acholé l'esrure de .x. arpens de tière,' *Le Roi Flore*, p. 143 (*Nouvelles Françaises du xiii^e Siècle*, ed. Moland et d'Héricault).

85. **All if**, even though. Comp. 'All if þe crosse were makede of tree | The fire 3ode owtt þat come þer nee,' *Sege off Melayne*, 448, 9; 'Al-if þe oyle war welland warme | þe appostell had þarof no harme,' *Horstmann*, A. L., ii. 35/57, 8. *If all* occurs in the same sense in *id.* 465/902, and in *Octavian*, 95/550. Other Northern forms are *al set*, *Horstmann*, *Barbour*, ii. 40/206, and *set*, *Wyntoun*, ii. 1452. **mekill of maine** is an uncommon alliteration, but it is in *Wallace*, viii. 604; 'mochel of myght,' *Laud Troy Book*, 3745.

87. **gaudes**, tricks, deceptions. The combination seems specially Northern, comp. 'Bot when þaire gaudes might noght gayne,' *Horstmann*, A. L., ii. 133/133 (in Northern dialect); 'For all þair gaudis sall noght þam gayne,' *York Plays*, 82/248.

90. **proud in prese**, see vii. 45, note.

91. **woundes flue**. Comp. 'vor cristes fif wunden ðu jif me milce & ore,' *O. E. Homilies*, i. 197/102; *O. E. Miscellany*, 57/696; 87/24.

II.

This poem was probably written soon after the defeat of the Scots at Halidon Hill, which Minot treats as a sufficient set-off to Bannockburn. In l. 7 the defeat at Dupplin and the subsequent occupation of Perth is referred to, while l. 15 perhaps points to the two raids over the English border in March and July, 1333, which failed to draw away Edward the Third from the siege of Berwick.

The refrain in the last line of each stanza and the linkage of the fourth and fifth line in each stanza are noteworthy.

3. **sakles**, innocent, perhaps said of the slaughter of women and children. According to *Barbour*, Bruce says, 'For throu me and my warraying | Of blud thar has beyne gret spilling | Quhar mony sakles man wes slayne,' xx. 173-5.

6. *zit*. Although the Scots are apparently so hopelessly beaten that the war seems completely ended, still it is necessary to guard against crafty surprises. 'Et sic dicebatur publice quod guerra in Scocia fuit finaliter finita et terminata, quia nullus remansit de natione illa, qui posset, sciret, aut vellet homines ad proelium congregare aut regere congregatos. Non tamen fuit verum, sicut inferius apparebit,' Muri-muth, p. 68. *with*, against, as in 'Be war with reirsuppers & of gret excess,' A Dietary (E. E. T. S., No. xxix), 50; 'And taucht mene þat al ydolis are | Bot fendis, and with þame to be ware,' Horstmann, Barbour, i. 36/325, 6. The charge against the Scots is repeated in ix. 61 and i. 87: it is extended to the French in vii. 62, 72, 136, and xi. 24. It is a commonplace in contemporary writers, 'Nam quia fidem in Scotis quasi nodum in cirpo quaesivit,' Gesta Edw. Tertii, p. 110. And it seems to have persisted, 'And there was concludyd (1464 A. D.) a pes for xv yere with the Schottys. And (= if) the Schottys ben trewe hyt moste nedys contynu so longe, but hit ys harde for to tryste unto hem for they byn evyr founde fulle of gyle and dyssaye,' Gregory's Chronicle, p. 224. Comp. also Skelton, i. p. 186. The Scotch in turn speak of the 'false Southron,' and the French accuse the English of unfaithfulness and fickleness.

7. *Saint Iohnes toune*, Perth; Froissart's St. Jehanstone. There is a church in it dedicated to St. John Baptist.

8. Comp. 'Are not these Scottys | Folys and sottys, | Such boste to make, | To prate and crake,' Skelton, i. 183/29-32.

9. Comp. iv. 66, v. 50, and 'þe boste of kyng Philip fayn þan wild he felle,' Langtoft, i. 203.

10. *kindel þow care*, a not common alliterative phrase. See ii. 19, x. 23, xi. 26, and comp. 'Ur copes were cumbersome, and kyndelet us care,' Swete Susan, 224; 'Then was sche warre of þe iiij þare | That had kyndylde all hur care,' Le Bone Florence, 2014, 15; 'Or he will kindill cares full calde,' Sege off Melayne, 596.

11. *crakked þowre croune*, is a favourite combination of the romance-writers. Comp. i. 59; 'Crounes thai gun crake,' Sir Tristrem, 887; 'he crakkede full many a carefull croun,' Rowland and Otuell, 1066; 'In feld when they togedur mett, | Was crakydd many a crown,' Erl of Tolous, 72; York Plays, 124/44.

13. Mätzner sees in this mention of Stirling a reference to the success of Wallace over Cressingham in 1297. *Strifin*, is Strevillyne in Bruce, i. 409, Estouvelin in Le Bel, i. p. 6. *steren and stout*, so 'þan þe iews ful sterne and stout,' Harrowing, 133.

15. Now have they, the plunderers, gone on their raids. Comp. 'Ffor they have take notable gode of oures | On thys seyde see, these false coloured pelours, | Called of Seynt Malouse, and elles where,'

Wright, Political Poems, ii. 164/13-15. 'Whedyr prykked thow, pilour, þat profers so large?' Morte Arthure, 2533; and note that the next line, Sir Edward has plundered them, carries on the idea. See N.E.D. s. v. Peeler, and Pill. Wülker, Lesebuch, p. 159, explains, They have dispersed through the country their best men, thus taking *pelers* as if 'pillars of the state.' But this gives a very unusual meaning to *pricked*, which Mätzner explains correctly, rode, spurred. Mätzner, however, takes *pelers* = pillars, and Kölbing, Eng. Stud., iv. 492, adopting this, explains, Now have they ridden round the pillars, the boundary marks, which gives a good sense, but with a meaning for *pelers* difficult to parallel. Besides, *about* naturally goes closely with *pricked*, as in 'And priked a-boute on palfrais from places to maners,' P. Plowman, C. 91/160; and it is noteworthy too that *pillar* in the Northern dialect at any rate has always *i* or *y* in its first syllable,—so pyllare, Wyntoun, i. 246; piller, Barbour; pyler, Hampole, 5388; piler, E. E. Psalter, 243.

18. *vnder*, defeated. Comp. 'Beleue hath mastry, and reson is under,' Pecock, Repressor, ii. p. 623; 'Pan had my maisters bene al vnder,' Seven Sages, 3798; 'Bot wes at wndyre throwch thame ay,' Wyntoun, v. 4517; Libeaus, 1397. It sometimes means, in adversity, in poor circumstances: 'A mane above is sone under by a draght of chekmate,' Rel. Ant., i. p. 271; 'Of thes frer mynours me thenkes moch wonder | That waxen are thus hauteyn that som tyme weren under,' Monum. Francis., i. p. 606. The contrasted word *above* is illustrated in Mätzner, Sprachproben, i. p. 163; *overhand* in the same sense is in Cursor, 2508. *bot gaudes*, unless when they succeed by surprises and tricks.

19. *Rughfute riueling*. Skelton inherits this topic of abuse, 'Of the out yles the roughe foted Scottes,' i. 187/170 and 194/41. The *riveling* or *rullion* is a kind of makeshift boot cut out of raw hide, made as described in the following passage: 'We go a hunting, and after that we have slain red deer we flay off the skin bye and bye, and setting of our bare foot on the inside thereof, for want of cunning shoemakers, by your grace's pardon, we play the cobblers, compassing and measuring so much thereof as shall reach up to our ancles, pricking the upper part thereof with holes, that the water may repass where it enters, and stretching it up with a strong thong of the same above our said ancles. So, and please your noble grace, we make our shoes. Therefore we, using such manner of shoes, the rough hairy side outwards, in your grace's dominions of England we be called *rough-footed Scots*,' Elder's Address to Henry VIII, *apud* Pinkerton's History, ii. 397 (quoted in Scott's Sir Tristrem). Such brogues are still the common wear in Iceland. The historian of Edward's first Scottish expedition describing a camp deserted by the Scots says, 'Et si trouvasmes . . . et plus de dix

mille vielz soulers tous usez, faitz de cuir tout cru, atout le poil, que ilz avoient laissié,' Le Bel, i. p. 70. Comp. also 'And led him (the Earl of Athole in 1335 A. D.) in tyll swylk dystres, | That at sa gret myscheff he wes, | That hys *knychtis* weryd revelynys | Off hydys, or off hart hem-mynys,' Wyntoun, viii. 4419-22; 'Also tha fand, quhair of tha had grait wonder, | Tua thousand pair of relyngis on the streit | That Erische men vsis to weir vpone their feit | In steid of schone, quhilk maid war of rouch skynnis, | In falt of buklis prickit war with pynnis,' Stewart's Boece, iii. 267/51318-22; 'Þou getes no þing but þi riuelyng to hang þer inne,' Langtoft, ii. p. 282, which corresponds to Wright, Pol. Songs, 307/541-3; 'Thws in the hyllis levyt he, | Till the maist part off his menþe | Wes rewyn and rent; na schoyne thai had, | Bot as thai thaim off hydys mad,' Bruce, ii. 508-511. So too a 'despitefull' Englishman says to Wallace, 'Thou Scot, abyde; | Quha dewill the grathis in so gay a gyde? | Ane Ersche mantill it war thi kynd to wer; | A Scottis thewtill wndyr thi belt to ber; | Rouch rewlyngis apoun thi harlot fete,' Wallace, i. 215-9.

20. **Berebag**, bag carrier. Le Bel explains how the Scots manage to dispense with baggage and so move about rapidly: 'Et si scevent bien qu'ilz trouveront bestes à grande abondance au pays où ilz veulent aler, pour quoy ilz ne portent aultre pourvéance [fors] que chascun porte entre sa selle et le panneau une grande plate pierre, et si trousse derrière luy une besache pleine de farine, à celle fin que quant ilz ont tant mengé de celle chair mal cuite que leurs estomacs leur semblent estre wapes (exhausted, L. *vapidus*) et flebes (enfeebled), ilz gettent celle plate pierre au feu, et destrempent ung petit de leur farine d'eawe, quant la pierre est eschauffée, et en font ung petit tourtel à manière d'une oulée de beguine et le mengent pour reconforter leur estomac,' i. p. 48. The place where the battle of the Standard was fought was once called Bagmoor, because, says a commentator on de Houedene (i. p. ci) the Scots in their flight threw away their bags. But for a more likely explanation, see Peacock's *Dialect of Manley*, p. 13. **þi biging es bare**, your dwelling is empty, ruined. See vii. 123, and comp. 'Comeþ þe maister budel, brust ase a bore, | seiþ he wole mi bugging bringe ful bare,' Bōddeker, A. D., 104/52, 3; 'Brent vp the byggynges & full bare maden,' Troy Book, 1379; 'We sall spuile þow dispiteously at the nixt springis; | Mak þow biggingis full bair, bodword haue I brocht,' Coilþear (Laing), 901, 2; 'Maid byggyngis bar als fer as euir thai past,' Wallace, viii. 950.

22. **Brug**, Bruges in Flanders. The MS. reading *brig*, and probably also *burghes*, in l. 25, conceals the name of this town, which appears as *bruge*, v. 15, and *bruges*, v. 19. So *Burges*, Borde's Introduction, p. 147. At P. Plowman, C. 110/278, three MSS. have *brigges*. There is abundant

evidence that Bruges was a favourite resort of Scotchmen in the fourteenth century. Comp. i. 67, 8, and 'That ilke yhere on ordynawns | Oure Kyng Dawy wes send in Frawns | . . . That ilke yhere Jamys Ben, | The Byschape off Sayntandrewys then, | To Brygys past oure the se; | Hys lattyre day thare cloyd he,' Wyntoun, viii. 3645, 6, 3651-4, and id. ix. 2943. The actual year of David's departure was 1334 (Rot. Scacc. Scot., i. p. clviii). The Chamberlain of Scotland, Reginald More, was established at Bruges, and there the second instalment of King David's ransom was paid (id. ii. p. 21). In 1408 the Earl of Mar on his way home from France lived there for some time (Wyntoun, ix. 2943-5). Murimuth indeed (p. 69) tells us that the Scotch bishops fled into France. Wülker thinks the poet consigns the unhappy Scots to a dwelling with the fiends and water sprites who live under bridges.

24. See i. 66, note.

25. *betes þe stretes*, frequents the streets, is much in evidence: similarly Cotgrave (ed. 1632) explains *Batre les chemins*, To belay the way as pursetakers and boothalers doe. And again under *Pave*, *Bateur de pavez*, A pauement beater; . . . one that walkes much abroad, and riots it wheresoeuer he walkes. Comp. 'MERKETBETER, *circumforanus*,' Cath. Anglicum, p. 236, with Herrtage's note.

32. *stane still*. Other examples of this favourite comparison are, 'No man alve ne schall me se | As styll as any ston,' Launfal, 356, 7; 'I shall make þe still as stone, begynnar of blunder,' Towneley Plays, 35/406; 'Bot hold þam stone stille in pes at þer contre,' Langtoft, ii. p. 266; 'And still als stane þou stand,' E. Studien, xxi. 207/8; York Plays, 146/4; Horstmann, A. L., ii. 271/219; Seven Sages, 3994; Myrc, 889; The Babees Book, 4/86.

33. *has wind for to spill*, indulges in empty talking. Comp. 'þat wind þou hauest ilore,' Otuel, 216; 'Speche þu maht spillen ant ne speden nawiht,' Juliana, 24/14; 'þer aboute 3e spilleþ breþ,' id. 82/37; 'Woman, thy wordis and thy wynde thou not waste,' York Plays, 258/121; Troy Book, 9788; 'Do way, mercy, þou spillist myche winde,' Hymns to the Virgin, 97/55.

36. *get*-is explained by Wright 'gain,' and Wülker quotes in support, 'Alle my get I schal yow gif agayn, bi my trawþe,' Gawayne, 1638. Mätzner suggests that it means 3et. But the alliteration shows that the *g* is hard, and the word is imperative of *geten*, O.W.Scand. *gæta*, to be on one's guard, to beware, as in, 'Our goddes with grace get vs þerfro,' Troy Book, 2113. The phrase then means, as in l. 6, We have got the better of them, but look out for their treachery.

III.

Edward in Brabant. The Sack of Southampton. The Taking of the 'Christopher.'

The first forty lines of this piece describe Edward's reception in Flanders. He sailed from Orwell on the 16th of July, 1338, and landed on the 22nd at Antwerp, where he was received with much ceremony. Minot is, however, mistaken in saying that he was met by the Emperor; it was only after irritating delays, unmentioned by the poet, on the part of his allies that Edward went in search of him to Coblentz and received his commission as Vicar-General of the Empire, which enabled him to strike money for the payment of his German auxiliaries (l. 35). The meeting with Lewis is described with great minuteness in Knighton, (ii. pp. 5, 6).

The second section of the poem describes the mischief done by Philip's fleet on the south coast of England. Already in 1337, and therefore before Edward's departure for Brabant (see ll. 40-48), a strong force of Normans, Picards and Genoese under Nicholas Behuchet had burnt Portsmouth. On Sunday, Oct. 4, 1338, while the townspeople were at mass, the French landed at Southampton from fifty galleys under Quiéret (v. 8), Behuchet, Barbenoire (x. 19) and Ottone Doria. They remained plundering till they learned that the country was rising against them, when they set fire to the town and retreated to their ships. Some three hundred of the lingerers, and among them the son of the king of Sicily, were cut off (ll. 63-70). Then, says Minot, they saw the Christopher at Aremouth in the Isle of Wight just opposite Southampton, and carried it off. But Adam of Murimuth, pp. 87, 106, says that the Christopher was one of five large vessels taken by the French in the port of Sluys while most of the sailors had gone to the town; and Edward himself in his despatch written after the battle of the Swyn details the recovery of the '*Cristofre et les autres qui estoient perdues à Middelburgh*' (Nicolas, *History of the Navy*, ii. p. 502). Further, Murimuth dates the loss of the Christopher on the feast of St. Michael, Sept. 29, the Tuesday before the attack on Southampton, while Minot reverses in point of time the order of the events. The presence of Edward at the fight is not mentioned by any chronicler, and the silence of de Klerk obliges us to fall back on the ingenious suggestion of Sir Harris Nicolas (*id.* p. 37), that the poet has confounded the presence of the ship 'Edward' with that of the king. The continuator of Nangis (ii. 161, 2) treats the sack of Southampton and the taking of the ships as quite distinct events, and says that the fight raged about the

Christopher for nearly a whole day with much bloodshed on both sides. (De Klerk, Van den derden Edewaert. Knighton. Murimuth. Walsingham. Nangis. Lockhart's Isle of Wight.)

In the MS. the next poem is written continuously with this. We may infer that this one originally ended at line 116, and that the poet, at the revision which left his works much in their present shape, added ll. 117-126 as a connecting link between two poems which naturally group together. Line 117 is a formula commonly used in the romances to introduce a new topic, here the revenge of the English at Sluys and Cressy foretold after the event.

1. **se and sand**, sea and shore, land; a favourite combination of which Mätzner has collected examples in *Alt. Sprachproben*, i. p. 362. Add, 'Was neuer more serwful segge, bi se, nor bi sande,' Swete Susan, 254; 'Pat lufes þe more, by se and sand, | Pan any man þat es lifand,' Ywain, 3657, 8; 'Pat all wroght and has in hand, | Sun and mone and se and sand,' Cursor, 10910; Erl of Tolous, 908; York Plays, 12/74 and frequently; but note 'see and lande,' Sir Isumbras, 732 (Halliwell). Minot's opening would satisfy the writer of Emare (ll. 13-18), 'Menstrelles, þat walken fer & wyde, | Her & þer in every syde, | In mony a dyuerse londe, Sholde[n], at her bygynnyng, | Speke[n] of that ryghtwys kyng, | That made both see and sonde.' Comp. also Bosworth Feilde, Percy Folio MS. iii. 235/1.

4. **withowten strif**, past denial, undoubted, as will be seen by comparison with, 'Þe ioyes sere | at god ordans with-owten strine | To þam þat lufes him in þare liue,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 169/438-40; 'Yf þo lorde gyf oȝt to terme of lyf, | The chaunceler hit seles withouten stryf,' Babees Book, 318/567, 8; 'Horn,' heo sede, 'wiȝute strif | þu schalt haue me to þi wif,' King Horn, C. 407, 8.

5. The construction with *to* is noteworthy; comp. 'Wher þou salt wreth to us withouten ende,' E. E. Psalter (Surtees, xvi.), i. p. 283; 'And all men þe sonere foregaue | There wreth þat þei to oþer haue,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 340/101, 2; Castel off Loue, 905. So with words of similar meaning, 'To quam men sal haue gret envi,' Cursor, 9332, Athelston, 79, and Zupitza's note, p. 356, but also with *at* in Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 33/491.

13. Lewis of Bavaria was elected Emperor in 1314, as Lewis the Fourth, but his election was not recognised by Pope John XXII. In 1341 he concluded a strict alliance with Philip of France. He died in 1347.

14. **had no pere**, see for a collection of examples of this phrase, Zupitza's note to Athelston, l. 33.

20. **Duche tung**. Comp. 'This Duche-land cald Germany,' Wyn-

toun, iv. 2423. The expression, no doubt, includes all the German dialects; De Klerk, lamenting the divisions of Christendom, says, 'Want tkerstenheit es gedeelt in tween; | Die Walsche tongen die es een, | Dandre die Dietsche al geheel,' ll. 1585-7.

21. See introduction; but it is curious that De Klerk speaks of Edward's reception by the emperor on landing almost in the same terms as here, 'Doe die keiser dat vernam, | Dat die coninc van Engellant quam, | Ontfing hine mit groter eren, | Also betaemt selken heren,' ll. 349-52. The Chronique de Berne has, 'Hoc inde petivit Anverpiam. Et fuit ibi dux Brabantiae consobrinus suus obviam ei ac praesentavit ei totam terram suam et posse suum.' Istore et Croniques de Flandres, i. p. 558. 'Et applicuerunt apud Andewerpian, ubi fuerunt prima facie cum honore recepti: et sibi dederunt obviam ibi dux Brabanciae, comites Hanoniae, de Geldre, et de Juliers, et alii magnates partium illarum, parati ad suum servitium, ut dixerunt,' Murimuth, p. 84.

23. with all payre rede, with the advice of them all, with one consent; practically the same as 'þis tnei bischopes and seint Dunstan were al at one rede,' Mätzner, Sprachprob., i. 175/143. Comp. also 'And beryd þe cors with both her rede,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 335/76. For proferd comp. 'He profers hym on al wyse | To myne honore & my servyse,' Ywain, 1233, 4.

26. Notwithstanding anything which might happen. Cursor, 8731, has 'For nathing, sco said, mai fall,' in same sense. Comp. also, 'That thei scholde come with-outen dwellyng | And speke with him for any-thing,' Laud Troy Book, 3103, 4: in 'For thynges that myght befall,' id. 3212, the meaning is, to provide against emergencies.

29. in frith and fen. *fen* is for the rhyme; the usual phrase being *frith and fell*, as in Anturs of Arther, i; Thomas of Erceldoune, 319; Towneley Plays, 156/515; Percy Folio, iii. p. 57, note. *Fild and frithe* come in Sir Amadace, xlii, and Alisaunder fragment, 15.

35. 'Si tinrent (Edward and his Queen) leur estat à Louvaing tout cel yver moult honnourablement, et fist faire monnoye d'or et d'argent à Antwers à grand foison; et fit faire escus à l'aigle au nom de l'empereur, semblans aux escus que le roi de France faisoit, qui bien eurent et ont leur cours,' Le Bel, i. p. 149. Ruding, Annals of the Coinage, vol. i. p. 408, thinks these coins were struck with English dies and are not now to be distinguished; while Lelewel, Numismatique du Moyen-Age, iii. p. 280, says that the 'esterlings' of Luxembourg were servilely copied in the name of Edward, and he figures in Plate xx, no. 46, a coin bearing the inscription LOCENBGENSIS. Comp. *Lussheborgh*, Piers Plowman, Notes, p. 357. But Van der Chÿs, in his Munten der voormalige Hertogdommen Braband en Limburg, gives representations of some of them, and says that they are of English type but easily dis-

tinguished by their legends from coins struck in England (Notes and Queries, 1852, p. 150); and a representation of one of them of silver is engraved in Willems' ed. of De Klerk's poem. It has on one side the crowned head of the king with legend *MONETA : NRA : ANTVVERP* ✠ (our mint of Antwerp), and on the other, *BNDICTV : SIT : NOMEN : DNI : NRI* ✠ on the outer circle; *SIGNUM CRUCIS* and a cross within.

36. Comp. 'Her egain mai naman sai,' Cursor, 798.

47. Comp. viii. 95.

49. Sailors soon were sent for.

52. Who had experienced both victory and defeat. The words are used with their ordinary meaning in 'þe pople fel adoun to ground | þai nist of wele no wo,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 234/348; 'And I shalle telle of there endinge | That mykelle wiste of wo and wele,' Le Morte Arthur, 7, 8. Similarly, '& ich him wulle suggen; of blissen and of sorwen,' *Lazamon*, 4631, 2.

57. held vp *paire handes*, as a way of showing thankfulness. So, 'When thei herde these tithandis, | Then thei held vp bothe here handis | And thanked her goddis of here wille,' *Laud Troy Book*, 3515-7. 'The burgeyse held vp his hand | And thankyd God þat he hath found,' *Ipomydon*, 1351, 2; '& Adam held vp boþe his hond | & þonked God of alle his sond,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 144/489, 90. It is a gesture of assent, *Erl of Tolous*, 632; *Sir Ferumbras*, 1406; and of prayer, *Cursor*, 4767. See also *Athelston*, p. 365, note on l. 154.

59. *Hamton*, Southampton. The longer name appears for the first time about the middle of the tenth century, but in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries *Hampton* is much the commoner.

66. *bileuid*, remained. So in *Thomas of Erceldoune*, 23, 'And wha sall dye and byleve thare.'

67. Comp. 'Was non of hem þat hise hernes | Ne lay þer-ute ageyn þe sternes,' *Havelok*, 1808, 9.

69. *gle*, shift, device; comp. iv. 57.

74. *syde*, coast. It must be understood with Flandres. Comp. 'Item alle Selandes side strecket dat lant sutwest and nortost. Item alle Vlanderenssyden strecket westsutwest und ostnortost,' *Seebuch*, pp. 50, 51.

76. *Armouth*, Yarmouth, at the mouth of the western Yar on the north-west coast of the Isle of Wight. It is styled *Eremouth* in its first charter, dated A. D. 1135, and the first appearance of the present name in an official document apparently occurs in a charter of James the First granted to *Eremue* *alias* Yarmouth. In *Rymer* it is *Yarnemuth* in *Insula Vectae*, ii. p. 950, while Great Yarmouth is generally *Gerne-muth* or *Jernemuth*, id. p. 948.

79. The galley was a vessel of a long and narrow type impelled

mainly by oars. At this time it was most used by the Genoëse and other sailors of the Mediterranean. Those ordered by Philip for his proposed Crusade in 1332 were for crews of two hundred men each, while the galleons or galiots of the same class but smaller were to be manned by one hundred men (Jal, *Archéologie Navale*, i. pp. 453, 4). In 1337, Ottone Doria of Genoa covenants to supply the French king with twenty galleys at 900 golden florins a month each. Each galley is to be manned by a captain, 2 mates, 2 clerks, 25 arblast men, and 180 rowers. The contract is printed in the *Chronique Normande*, p. 210, and Doria was present at the pillage of Southampton with these vessels, receiving a present of a hundred 'livres tournois' from Quiéret for coming to the help of his men whose vessel first entered the harbour, *id.* p. 251. For pictures of galleys see Yule's *Marco Polo* and Stirling-Maxwell's *Don John of Austria*. Jurien de la Gravière, *Les derniers jours de la Marine à Rames*, Paris, 1885, though mainly about the galley of the sixteenth century, has a good appendix on its construction and management. The taret, O.F. taride, L.L. tareda, tarida, was a large vessel like a galley, but mostly used for transport (Jal, *Glossaire Nautique*, pp. 1429, 30). The cog, O.N. kuggr, was an English vessel very broad and deep in proportion to its length. The king's favourite vessel, the cog Thomas, was manned by 136 sailors, and was probably of 200 to 250 tons burthen (Nicolas, ii. p. 161). But it seems to have been one of the largest; the John de Douorre and the Mighel of the same place have each 34 soldiers at 8d. a day, and 35 sailors at 3d. a day in 46 Edw. III (Record Office, E. B. 160 ⁶/₈⁵). The English war vessel of this period was generally a merchant ship specially fitted with a high raised bulwark at either end.

87. *still*, if correct, is due to the need for a rhyme; it rhymes with *will* seven times.

92. *in dede doghty*. Comp. 'Sone, seyde Clement, be doghty of dede,' Octavian, 150/1438; 'Sir knyghtys that ar of dede dughty,' Towneley Plays, 213/308.

93. *wane* mostly takes a noun in apposition, as, 'To Sarsyns habbeþ þay 3yue anon | Of sturne strokes wel god won,' Sir Ferumbras, 5517; 'for 3e haue werldes welth gude wane,' Seven Sages, 265. So with other words of similar meaning, 'He sal quete find vs gret plente,' Cursor, 6500.

95. *put þam to were*. Skeat explains, 'prepared themselves for battle' or 'prepared to defend themselves,' like 'mult se penoient de desfendre,' Wace, Brut, 336. It might mean 'put the enemy in distress,' comp. 'All the pepull to pyne put,' Troy Book, 8852; xi. 20.

100. *hire*. Comp. vii. 66; and, 'He wol quite þe wel þin hire,' Horstmann, S. A. L., 40/332.

102. A formula which occurs frequently, with little meaning, in the romances. Comp. 'Thane armede þe geaunt hym ful wele | Bothe in iryne and in stele,' Octavian, 111/690, 1; 'An helm of riche atire | Þat was stele, and noon ire,' Libeaus, 255, 6, and 464; 'Girde þi swerde of iren and stele,' E. E. Psalter, i. p. 145; Richard Coer de Lion, 2544; Alisaunder, 5549-51; A. & M. 90/3161, 2; and Sir Tristrem, 3324, in the note to which other places will be found quoted.

109. Comp. 'Þare i fand þe fayrest thorne | That ever groued sen god was born,' Ywain, 353, 4; 'Þat has bene us beforne | And þe tyme sen god was borne,' 103/4; Amis, p. xlv, has a large number of examples.

111. This turn of expression is found in Alisaunder, 3770, 1, 'No sygh never men beter fyghtors, | Betir stonders, no beter weorryours,' in Roland fragment, 1001; 'Was ther neuer beter men slayn, I trow,' and in 'Ne neuere better men born ware,' Laud Troy Book, 39.

116. 'For their earnest wish to beat the French.' Comp. 'As thai that war in-to gud will | To wenge the angir and the Ill,' Bruce, v. 99, 100, and xix. 417; 'He þat wes mast in gud wil | His handis for to strek hir til,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 188/127; York Plays, 66/336.

117. Such expressions were used by the minstrels to rouse the attention of their hearers at the beginning of a new division of their story. Comp. viii. 57, and Amis, p. xliii, for a collection of them.

126. **his haly hand.** Comp. 'hold ouer me, lord, thy holy hand,' Towneley Plays, 42/75; 'Godd hald ouer him his holi hand,' Cursor, 4196 and 4804; 'He blesse ows alle wiþ his hond | And sende ows pes in Engelond,' A. & M. 359/1979, 80.

IV.

Edward's first invasion of France. Flamengerie.

About the 20th of September, 1339, Edward quitted Valenciennes at the head of the allied forces, and entered Cambrésis. He captured Thun-l'Évêque and besieged Cambrai, but as the winter was coming on he decided to abandon the siege and to invade France. Many strong places were taken and sacked on his way, and nothing was to be seen but fire and ruin till Edward arrived at Flamengerie. Meanwhile Philip was at Saint-Quentin, from which place, on Sunday, the 17th of October, a letter was sent by Gallois de la Baume, the commander of the cross-bowmen, on behalf of his master Philip, to Hugh de Genève for Edward. It was attested by letters from the king of Bohemia and the Duke of Lorraine on the 20th, and it stated that the king of France had been told that Edward had said he would wait a fortnight or three weeks for a battle if he knew Philip wanted to fight. If then, it continued,

Edward will wait till Thursday or Friday following he will get his desire. Edward replied that he had been in France for more than three weeks, and Philip could have fought already if he had wished. He would, however, wait till the day named. On the Wednesday, accordingly, he prepared for the fight, but the enemy did not come. Philip appears to have advanced as far as Buironfosse, about three miles off. Thursday was spent in a foray on the country about Thiérace, and on Friday Edward again awaited the French. In the evening Philip sent a message that he would not fail Edward on the next day. On Saturday, then, Edward took up a position about a league from Flamengerie, and drew up his men so skilfully that the Germans and Brabançons were astonished and delighted when they saw the king and his people 'prest pur vivre et mourir en la place' (Froissart, xviii. p. 90). After Edward had knighted a large number of the young esquires, he and his nobles caused wine to be given to the troops, 'feirent amener des vynes pur doner à boire à tous leurs gentes' (id. xviii. p. 91). A prisoner was then sent off to Philip to point out that it was not courteous to keep the English waiting. But the king of France retreated to St. Quentin on the same day, Saturday the 23rd, with such haste that he left behind him a thousand horses in a marsh. Edward, by his own account, remained till the following Monday, when he returned to Antwerp, but Nangis says he too went on Saturday. The French king's reasons for not fighting are variously stated; he was dissuaded because it was Friday, because his troops were not sufficiently rested, and because Edward's position was too strong. King Robert of Sicily, too, had discovered by astrological science that the fates were against him. De Klerk says that he was eager to fight till he ascertained that the Duke of Brabant was still with Edward. (Froissart. L'Ordonnance des Anglais à la Flamengerie, printed in Lettenhove, xviii. p. 89, from MS. Cotton, Caligula D. iii. Avesbury. Rymer. Chronicon Monast. de Melsa. iii. Nangis. Chronique Normande. De Klerk. Oudegherst.)

This poem in the MS. follows the last one without any break, but as it differs in form from the third, it is here separated from it. Opposite the first line in the MS. is written in pencil, Warton, iii. p. 103; see Ritson's Minot, p. ix for a characteristic reference to the History of English Poetry.

3. The repetition of *cumly* is suspicious, but comp. vii. 95.

6. To time, until. Comp. 'To tyme that childe to deth were dight,' Towneley Plays, 221/544.

7. of mightes maste. The plural noun is usually found in this phrase. Comp. vii. 26; 'I trow in the mekle God, that maist of nichtis may,' Coiljear, 888; 'God in glorie of myghteste moost,' Sowdone of

Babylone, 1; 'Art þou noghte halden of myghtis moste,' Sege off Melayne, 550; Cursor, 25577; Horstmann, A. L., i. 40/340, 200/122. But, 'As mon on this mydlert that most is of myȝte,' Anturs of Arther, 1. See Athelston, p. 343, note on l. 2.

12. The same combination occurs in Cursor, 839, 'Of sin, and sorou and shame and strife.'

18. So John of Bridlington's prophecy, 'Laetificabuntur Angli pinguedine musti,' with the gloss, 'i. per bona vina quae bibent ad suorum confortationem transeundo per terram Franciae.' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 156, 7. According to the Frenchman in the Dispute, id. p. 92, the English were not used to it; 'Non alit ipse liquor vitis, faex venditur Anglis, | Quae cum sit liquida creditur esse liquor.'

26. **prise**, glory, honour. So Sir Tristrem, 51, 'To heize and holden priis,' to exalt and retain their fame; Böddeker, A. D., 129/88; Bruce, xiv. 82. Minot's opinion is shared by at least one French chronicler: 'Et tunc rex Franciae nescitur quali usus consilio, eidem obviare differt, propter quod magnum scandalum ac murmur non solum in exercitu sed etiam in toto regno contra ipsum exortum est,' Nangis, ii. p. 164.

30. Comp. iv. 96; and, 'I shal schak hym by the berd | The nexte tyme we mete,' Sir Degrevant, 819, 20; 'The kyng by chyn him schoke,' Alisaunder, 3934; Wright, Pol. Songs, 324/18.

43. **morning**, probably of Saturday the 23rd. The mist is not mentioned in any of the chronicles.

45. Their joyful anticipation of battle was clouded. Other examples of the alliteration are, 'Micht I chaip of this chance, that changes my cheir,' Coilȝear (Laing), 721; 'Qwan þe Juwys thoutyn hym to slo, | þan chaungyd al here chere,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 103/155, 6; Ywain, 2234; Launfal, 921; Le Bone Florence, 819. See also Mätzner, p. 563.

54. **frek to fight**. Comp. l. 84, and i. 13. *Frek* alternates with *fresh* in this phrase; so, 'To ffyȝte þey were ful ffressche þat tyde,' Richard, 7008; 'All fresch i am to fȝt,' Libeauss, 1943; Alisaunder fragment, 946.

56. **dwell**, await battle, for which Minot more commonly uses *abide*.

57. **gayned him no gle**, no device or trick was of service to him: an uncommon expression, but comp. 'of a gome þat gayned no gle,' Rel. Ant. i. 77/39. **gle** with meaning, business, line of action, is exclusively Northern, comp. iii. 69. Similarly *gamen*, as in 'Vngainand þan sal be his gamen,' Cursor, 22751: the modern *game* has retained the meaning, policy, 'dodge.' In 'þer nis no murgȝþe þat may him gayne,' Ferumbras, 2034, the sense is simply, he can take pleasure in nothing. A similar phrase with *gamen*, 'to please,' is frequent, as, 'gamyt hem

non oþer gle,' Horst., A. L., i. 107/424; 'Quen he wit his gleu him gammen,' Cursor, 7409; 'Sone with þe Danes gamned þam no glewe,' Langtoft, i. p. 18.

58. So, 'He no couþe no better bot' (he knew of no better resource), Rouland and Vernagu, 564; 'Florent sawe none odor bote | But þat he muste fyght on fote,' Octavian, 140/1261, 2.

59. on fote, on his feet. *Fote* here and at vi. 30 is a dative plural, M.E. *foten*, O.E. *fōtum*. See Zupitza, Guy of Warwick, 598 note.

61-63. Philip in his challenge had declared himself willing to take up a position unfortified by wood, marsh or water. But Edward in his letter to the council (Avesbury, pp. 305, 6), declares that Philip broke this self-imposed condition: 'En le mesne temps si estoient ascuns de noz descoverours une chivaler Dalmaigne pris, quavoit ven tut nostre arrai, et le monstre en aventure a noz enemys; issint (ainsi) meintenaut qil fist retrere savaunt garde et comanda de loggier, et fisrent fosses entour eaux et couperent lez grosses arbres pur nous tolr (take away, prevent, L. tollere) la venne a eaux.' Murimuth, p. 102, is to the same effect, 'Sed rex Franciae, licet prope fuisset per ij. milliaria, nunquam tamen eis voluit appropinquare; sed rediit, et fractis pontibus et prostratis arboribus ad impediendum iter regis Angliae ne sequeretur eum, Parisius est reversus.' Comp. also for the combination, 'He have gevyne amonge þe okes | knyghtys so mony grette strokes,' Ipomadon, 4014, 5.

67. cares colde, also at vii. 87. It is a very common alliterative expression; 'For care ful colde þat to me caȝt,' The Pearl, 50; 'þus y kippe & cacche cares ful colde,' Bōddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 104/61 and 102/9; Towneley Plays, 285/207; 'Casten y wol the from cares ant kelde,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Soc.), p. 37; 'þe kyng for þat care coldit at his hert,' Troy Book, 1306; Awntyrs of Arthure, 150; W. of Palerne, 1656. On the other hand we have, 'þaȝ I hente ofte harmeȝ hate,' The Pearl, 388.

68. Comp. 'ðe king him bad ben hardi & bold,' Genesis, 2121; 'And thow art hardi, strong & bolde,' Laud Troy Book, 2299.

70. þe king als of Nauerne. Philip the Third was the father-in-law of Philip of Valois. His eldest son, Charles the Second, the Bad, was at Crécy. Nauerne rhymes with sterne in Octavian, 31/962, and the form is also used by Skelton, 'Of the kyng of Nauerne ye might take heed | Vngraciously how he doth speed,' i. 187/153, 4: it is possibly due to Navarreni, Latin for the natives of Navarra.

71. The line is corrupt, the second, third and fourth words are in smaller writing as if filled in afterwards. Skeat suggests that *feld* may mean, felled, knocked down, which would not suit the next line, or it may, he thinks, be an error for *fled*, i. e. had fairly fled away. Scholle

adopts *felid* which can only mean, hid; comp. Small, Met. Homilies, p. 12. *Faire* seems to me to have absorbed two distinct words, *fain* and *for*. I propose to read, War *fain* for *fered* in the *ferene*. Comp. for *fayn*, 'Fayn he was hys hedd to hyde,' Erl of Tolous, 113, and for *for fered*, iv. 27, 93; vii. 90; 'And felede theme so feynte they falle in þe greues | In the ferynne of þe fyrthe, fore ferde of oure pople,' Morte Arthure, 1874, 5; 'ffor to fele me for ferde of tha foule thynggez,' id., 3238; 'He sperd his þate & in he ran | For fered of þat wode man,' Ywain, 1677, 8. Mätzner, Alteng. Sprachproben, i. p. 122, note, gives further examples.

72. This alliteration is common, especially in the romances. Comp. 'Ther es none of þow so hardy, | And þe hade sene his cheualry, | þour hedis þat ye nolde hyde,' Rowland and Otuell, 262-4; 'For dred of dethe he hid neuer his hed,' Roland fragment, 211; 'Or busk to youre beyldyng | youre heedys for to hyde,' Towneley Plays, 167/35; Libeauss, 1167; King of Tars, A. 1187; Horn Childe, 252. See also Amis, p. 1.

77. *tolde*, esteemed, held. This meaning is well illustrated by 'þar as y ha be arst mykel of tolde, For a coward y worþ y-holde,' Sir Ferumbras, 4212. Comp. also, 'þef þou art riche & wel ytold, | Ne be þou noht þarefore to bold,' Böddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 292/119, 20.

79. *riche on raw*, splendid in their ranks, the *row* of this phrase is apparently either the line of guests at table, or, as here, of knights in line of battle. Comp. 'Before þat riale renkis, richest on raw, | Salust þe bauld berne with ane blith wont,' Golagrus, 1277, 8 (Anglia, ii. p. 438) the only example I have met with.

80. Comp. v. 29, x. 8. Villani, vi. p. 168, says of this occasion, 'Ma veggendosi che il re di Francia non venia alla battaglia trombando e ritrombando se n' andarono ad Arenes in Tiraccia (Thiérace).' Froissart shows us Edward entering Berwick in 1333 'à grant solennité de trompes et de nakaires, de cornemuses, claronceaux et tabourins,' ii. p. 275. Like his father he was a great patron of minstrels of all kinds, as his household accounts sufficiently show.

81. *at paire might*, see i. 29, note.

85-87. See the introduction to the poem, p. 55. But le Bel says the English and their allies had been drawn up in the fields from morning to noon without eating or drinking, i. p. 161. The practice is illustrated by Barbour, Bruce, xix. 331-6, where the English 'send out archeris a thousand | And gert thaim weill drink of the vyne | And bad thaim gang to bikkyr syne | The scottis host in abandoune, | And luk if thai mycht dyng thaim doune.'

88. 'Le Lundy matin si avoms nouvelles qe le dit sire Phelipe et toutz sez alliez fusrent desparpilez et retretz a graunt haste,' Edward's letter, Avesbury, 306.

96. *keped him in þe berde*, withstood him at close quarters : comp. 'And kepe him euene in the berd, | For he was nouȝt of him aferd,' *Laud Troy Book*, 1383, 4.

V.

The Sea Fight at Sluys.

When Edward was about to leave England for his second invasion of France in 1340, he was told that Philip had collected a large fleet at Sluys to hinder his landing. He therefore waited about ten days (l. 21) till he had got together about two hundred ships, sailing on the 22nd of June. On the following day he arrived before *Blanckenberghe*, where he was joined on the morning of the 24th by Sir Robert Morley with fifty vessels of the Northern Fleet. The French were commanded by Hugues Quiéret and Nicolas Behuchet, and they were strengthened by a squadron under Barbenoire, a corsair of Porto Venere, 'qui estoit tres bons weriers et hardis' (*Jean d'Outremeuse*, vi. p. 369). The battle, 'une des rudes & cruelles batailles marines dont on ouyt oncques parler' (*Oudegherst*, ii. p. 447), began on the afternoon of Saturday the 24th, and resulted in the complete defeat of the French. The details of the struggle may be read in *Nicolas, History of the Navy*.

The stanza beginning with l. 15 in its present place separates the *herof* of l. 19 from l. 12 to which it refers; and in subject it plainly belongs to the second section of the poem which deals with those who were at the fight. It should be transferred, and probably to follow l. 62 or l. 70.

The irregularity in the length of the stanzas both here and in ix. is remarkable. They consist of six lines or of four, but the former may be extended to eight by the repetition in two additional lines of the idea of the sixth (see ll. 13, 14; ix. 7, 8; 27, 28). The two kinds of stanzas are mostly grouped together, not alternated. The irregularity is scarcely due to carelessness on the part of the scribe, or to writing down from imperfect memory, as nothing seems wanting to the sense in either poem. A similar irregularity, too, occurs in the Hymn on p. 75 of *Religious Pieces* (E. E. T. S. No. 26), which I ascribe to Minot; its verses are of eight lines with the exception of the first two, which have six each.

1. **Minot with mowth.** Comp. 'It es no lifand man with mowth | þat half hir cumforth tel kowth,' *Iwain*, 1381, 2; 'Horn iherde wip his ires,' *King Horn*, C. 959 and 755 note; *Athelston*, p. 392, note on l. 458.

4. **mi sorow suld slake**, a not common alliteration, but comp.

'ffor thi I red thi sorowe thou slake,' Towneley Plays, 269/356; 'For it wolde do my sorowe to slake,' York Plays, 422/45; 'Allace, Ded, quhene wil þu tak | Me, & al my sorou slak,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 19/496, 7, and 119/254.

7. cast was in care. See vi. 18 note.

8. **Kyret.** Hugues Quiéret, Chevalier, Seigneur de Tours en Vimeu, is styled 'magnificus vir dominus H. Q. miles admiratus' in a document of 1335 which gives him the command of five galleys in the proposed crusade of Philip. He was appointed Admiral of France in 1336; in 1338 he visited Bruges on behalf of the French King; and in 1339 he was Captain of Douay. In that year he served on the frontier of Flanders. He died of the wounds he received at Sluys. Froissart calls him 'bons chevaliers et hardis' (iii. 201). Two of his descendants were killed and two taken prisoner at Agincourt, (de la Chenaye-Desbois, Dictionnaire de la Noblesse, xi. p. 637, xiv. p. 515. Luce, Froissart, i. p. ccxxii, ii. p. xvii).

9. **Normondes.** The enemy's vessels were mainly manned by them. Comp. 'Dese vrancrijcsche partien | Waren meest uut Normandien, | Ende van Kaleys uter stede; | Oic so waren daer mede | Een deel Vlaminge te waren | Die uten lande gebannen waren,' De Klerk, 1283-8. So in an account (Record Office, Navy 68²) a payment is made to the master of a ship acquired 'apud le Esclus ad bellum Normannorum.' The fleets which had preyed on the southern coast of England for the three years previous came mainly from the north of France, and the squadron which appeared before Southampton in 1339 summoned the town to surrender to the Duke of Normandy. Perhaps Minot, in his special dislike of 'þe fals folk of Normundy,' vii. 72, expresses a specially English feeling, a survival of the Conquest. Comp. from a poem of the middle of the thirteenth century, 'Gens Normannigena fragili nutritur avena, | Subdola, ventosa, mendax, levis, invidiosa, | Vincere mos est Francigenis nec sponte nocere, | Prodere dos Norman-nigenis belloque pavere,' Reliq. Antiq. i. p. 5. leue on his lare, see vi. 22, note.

12. sowed him sare. *Sowed* is explained by its synonym *smerted* in the next line. See Gloss. and for this Northern phrase comp. 'I shall send venyance ix or ten | Shall sowe full sore or I seasse,' Towneley Plays, 69/172; 'For, in faythe, I fele yt yette | That sore it dothe me sowe,' Ipomadon, 5183, 4; 'Thinkand he mycht na payne mare | Do til hyme to sow hyme sare,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 104/291, 2; 'When I sall quake and dredfull be | And all my synnes sowe full sare,' Religious Pieces, 77/75, 6; 'þat wil yow hereafter sare sow,' Cursor, 6568; York Plays, 334/437.

15. Edward in his despatch says, 'Les Fflemengs estoient de bone

volente d'avoir venuz a nous ala bataille du comencement tange ala fin' (Nicolas, ii. p. 502), a statement which Nicolas (p. 51) finds rather obscure. But Froissart is explicit, 'Et dura le bataille del heure de prisme jusques à relevée (afternoon) et adont vinrent grant gent de Flandres, car tres le matin li bailleux de l'Escluse l'avoit fet segnefyer à Bruges et ès villes voisines. Si estoient les villes toutes esmutes et acouru à piet et à cheval et par le Roe . . . et s'asablèrent à l'Escluse grant quantité de Flammens et entrèrent en nefes et en barges et en grans vaissiaux espagnols et s'en vinrent jusques à le bataille tout fresk et tout nouvel et grandement reconfortèrent les Englès,' Froissart, iii. p. 197.

17. *pe Sluse*, province of Zeeland, arrondissement of Middelburgh: 'Le havre de l'Escluse qui est ung des plus beaulx havres de Christianité,' Le Débat des Hérauts (abt. 1450), p. 27. The word means, the floodgate, L. *exclusa*; it began to supersede the former name *Zwijjn*, the southern port, about the middle of the fourteenth century (Southey, *Lives of the Admirals*, i. p. 245). The harbour is now sanded up. by a name, possibly, to a man, individually enumerated, but apparently a mere *cheville*; elsewhere it means, expressly; 'But god that died ffor man be name | Saue his body ffro dedly shame,' *Beuis of Hamtoun*, 60/1019, 20; 'I saide þat he schuld breke | Yourre barres and bandis by name,' *York Plays*, 383/189, 90; 'As he told before by name, | To our fader, abraham,' *Towneley Plays*, 99/76.

20. *Walsingham* says that the information came from the Count of Gileres, i. e. *Juliers* (*Hist. Anglic.*, i. p. 226). But *Avesbury*, p. 311, tells us that the king first heard of it from the Archbishop of Canterbury, and thought the story an invention to keep him at home. *Orwell* is a river the estuary of which opens out between *Ipswich* and *Harwich* in *Suffolk*. See *Archaeologia*, x. p. 350.

27. *Blanckenberghe* in *West Flanders*, arrondissement of *Bruges*, situated on the sea-coast a little to the west of the river *Sluys*. *Saint Jons night*, Friday the 23rd of June, is the vigil or evening before *St. John's day*.

30. See ix. 25, note.

32. *Sir Robert Morley*, Marshal of Ireland by his marriage with *Hawyse*, sister and heir to *John le Mareschall* of *Hengham* in *Norfolk*, and Admiral of the Northern Fleet in 1339-41, 1348, 1350 and 1355. He was at *Crécy*, *Calais* and *Espagnols sur Mer*. He died in France in 1360 possessed of the manors of *Gressinghall* and *Morley Hall* in *Norfolk*. The latter is in the parish of *Morley St. Botolph*, Hundred of *Forehoe*; it is not far from *Wymondham*. *Blomefield's Norfolk*, ii. p. 481.

33. *At half eb*. It was high water on the day of the battle at 11.23 a.m. (Nicolas, ii. p. 51). *Minot's half-ebb* would then fall

about three o'clock in the afternoon, and this would agree fairly well with Edward's statement in his dispatch, that the battle began 'bien apres heure de noune,' and with Le Baker, 'Post horam nonam . . . hostibus dedit optatum insultum,' p. 68, where see the note p. 243, 4. Froissart says the fight began at prime, i. e. about nine o'clock.

36. *paire wapin es oway*. Comp. 'To say your perle is al awaye,' The Pearl, 258; 'his gentilnesse was alle away,' Le Morte Arthur, 1082; 'þe feste was trobled & myrþe aweye,' R. of Brunne, 4030; 'Our bred, our wyn ys al away,' Ferumbras, 2504; 'þy miȝte ys al oway,' id. 5126; 'Al awei was hire wo,' K. of Tars, V. 857; 'Se, thi mens myghte es alle away,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 185/163.

37. William de Bohun was created earl of Northampton in 1337. He was at Flamengerie, and in 1342 he was appointed Lieutenant-General of Edward in Brittany. He captured the king of Majorca at Crécy. In 1350 he was Warden of the Scotch Marches, and he died in 1360. Doyle's Official Baronage, ii. p. 613. *Helpid at þat nede*: Comp. 'To help me at þis nede,' K. of Tars, A. 1008; 'Help now in þis nede,' Horn Childe, 264.

38. *worthli in wede*. See x. 2, and the variant *wight in wede*, viii. 5. *Wede* is here armour, as in 'Richely armed in his wede,' Torrent of Portyngale, 1265. The phrase is common in the romances, 'ȝondere I see full brighte Banere | And worthily vndir wede,' Rowland and Otuell, 860, 1; 'þat ich maide, worpli in wede,' Amis, 1430; 'That wyt ys vndyr wede,' Torrent of Portyngale, 749; Sir Degrevant, 1892; Octavian, 65/21.

39. Sir Walter Manny, 'bons chevaliers, rades, preux, hardis, sages et bachelereux' (Froissart, ii. p. 193), is first met with in a Household Account of 1332, as 'Watelet de Hainault, pagius custos leporariorum dominae reginae.' He came to England in the train of Queen Philippa. In 1332 he was entrusted with the charge of the castle of Hardelagh, and in 1337 he was Admiral of the Northern Fleet and one of the commanders of the expedition to Cadzand. He commanded an expedition to Brittany in 1345 and was present at the siege of Calais. In 1347 he became a baron of the realm by a writ of summons to Parliament, and in 1348 he was again Admiral of the Northern Fleet. He took part in the sea-fight with the Spaniards in 1350. He died in London in 1372.

40. This line would present no difficulty if we read, Was bold burne his body in battle to bede.. If it be right as it stands, it contains a curious admixture of two phrases, (1) bold of body, and (2) to bede (offer, risk) one's body, with a suggestion of (3) to bede (offer) battle. Comp. for (1) 'bold burnes of bodies · þere were on boþe sides,' William of Palerne, 3618: for (2) 'Ye ne have na knyght in þis cuntre | þat durst right now his body bede,' Ywain, 952, 3: and for

(3) 'Gif ony wald hym byde battale,' Bruce, viii. 284; 'Ilk dai he come in place, | And batail bede wit sli manace,' Cursor, 7471, 2; 'bataile to bede,' xi. 35. There are also the common, to abide battle, and to abide in battle, for which comp. 'The boldest under baner batelle to abide,' Political, Religious and Love Poems, 2/39; 'bold burnes to abide in batayles harde,' William of Palerne, 3331; Hymns to the Virgin, 84/35, 6. In xi. 34 habyde is used absolutely, with the same sense.

41. Henry of Derby, 'qui au temps présent est l'ung des plus proeus et des beaulz chevaliers armé et désarmé qui soit en vye,' Le Bel, i. p. 16. He took part in the Scotch campaign of 1335. In 1337 he became Earl of Derby, and in that year he was joined with Sir Walter Manny in the attack on Cadzand. He was at Flamengerie. In 1345 he became Earl of Lancaster by the death of his father. He distinguished himself at the sea-fight with the Spaniards in 1350. He was created Duke of Lancaster by special charter in 1352. He was in France again in 1359 and 1360 and he died of the plague in the following year. Doyle, ii. p. 312. *dight for to driue* is a combination of which I have not found any other example.

42. With *mody*, comp. 'He wolle be *mody* man of *jewys*,' Archiv. cxi. 296/717; 'mony a *mwdy* *sarasyne*,' Barbour, Bruce. xx. 394. *pat thought for to thriue*, that had a mind bent on success. The phrase is illustrated by 'And hopis beste for to spede,' Thomas of Erceldoune, 454; 'Egyllamowre wened welles to do,' Sir Eglamour, 385; Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 178/89; and 'There come meny another man | That thought there to have to done,' Torrent of Portyngale, 2446, 7; 'ich wende *swiðe* wel to don,' *Lazamon*, 3430.

43. *stint he pat striue*, put an end to that struggle. Comp. 'But they stynte of ther stryfe,' Erl of Tolous, 930; 'For he may stynte oure stryve,' York Plays, 58/61. See also Amis, p. xlvi.

45. 6. 'A celle bataille fut mort ledit messire Hue Kyres et plusieurs de son lignage, et bien trente mille hommes que morts que noyez, ainsi comme on disoit; desquelz la mer en jetta grand partie sur la rive de l'Escluse et de Cagant, et furent trouvez aucuns tous armez ainsy que combastus s'estoient,' Le Bel, i. p. 172. Comp. too the grim joke recorded in the Chronicon Monast. de Melsa, iii. p. 45, 'Tantique fuerunt ibidem Franci et Normanni interfecti et submersi quod de eis ridicule dicebatur quod si Deus piscibus maris loquelam dedisset, ex ipsorum mortuorum devoratione, ydioma Gallicum profecto in posterum habuissent.' According to Walsingham, Hist. Anglic., i. p. 227, the news of the defeat was broken to the French King by his fool, who accused the English of cowardice, and when asked by the king why he did so, said, 'Quia timidi sunt et in mare saltare non sunt ausi, ut fecerunt nostri Normanni et Gallici generosi.'

47. Sir William Clinton took part in Edward's first Scotch campaign, and he was subsequently Justice of Chester, Governor of Dover, and Warden of the Cinque Ports. He helped to surprise Mortimer at Nottingham, and was soon after, in 1330, summoned to Parliament as a Baron of the Realm. He was Admiral of the Western Fleet in 1333, and was at Halidon Hill in that year, and in 1335 and 1336 he was employed on various embassies. In 1337 he was created Earl of Huntingdon. In 1339 he was Admiral of the Thames, and again Warden of the Cinque Ports. He was present at Crécy, and in the following years diplomatic missions were often entrusted to him. He died in 1354. Doyle, ii. p. 225. *eth for to knaw*. Comp. 'Eth was to know quilk þat þai ware,' Cursor, 8028.

48. *on raw*, he brought with him many strong men (archers, as in l. 54) drawn up in good order. This seems the explanation most suitable to the *paire* of l. 49; otherwise *brought on raw* might mean, killed, as in, 'Smoot and leide on with mayn | And slough a rawe two duzeyn,' Alisaunder, 5838, 9; '& þre kniȝtes al a rawe | He binam þer her liif dawe,' A. & M. 1111/3903, 4, 252/9047; 'That he myght the Romaynes kille | Playnly on a rowe,' Sowdone of Babylone, 389, 90, and 3105, 6; Ferumbas, 4605.

53. Not Hugh Despencer, as Ritson says, but Hugh de Aldithley or Audley, who married the widow of Piers Gaveston, one of the daughters and co-heirs of Gilbert de Clare. He was with Edward in Scotland in 1335, and at Flamengerie. He was created Earl of Gloucester in 1337, and he died in 1347. Doyle, ii. p. 18.

59. John Badding, 'one of þe best,' is, unlike the six persons already commemorated, mentioned in no account of the battle. Possibly Badding is a scribe's error for (1) Beauchamp, second son of Guy de Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, who is specially mentioned by Froissart, iii. p. 202, or for (2) Bathe or Bathon, who gave evidence in the Scrope and Grosvenor Case (Nicolas, Scrope and Grosvenor Roll, ii. p. 190), and who is probably identical with the Mayor of Bristol in 1369 and 1371 (Ricart's Kalendar, p. 35). But this is very improbable; the poet has here inserted the name of some comparatively obscure friend of his. A John Badding is mentioned in Harleian Charter, 84 B. 10. of 17th Richard II. He is one of four persons (another being a citizen of Norwich) to whom Alianor, widow of Robert de Ufford, surrenders her right of dower in the Manor of Chebyngheale in Fresyngfeld, County Suffolk, but nothing further of him is known. The surname is more particularly connected with Sussex. A Ralph de Bedyng is Prior of Sele in that county in 1324 (Sussex Collections, x. 128). Richard Baddyng is part master and owner of a barge of Rye in 46 Edw. III (Compotus of William Tidecombe, Record Office, E. B. 160 99⁵). He

is apparently the person who was M.P. for Rye in 1366 and 1368 (Sussex Collections, xxx. p. 189, and Return of Names of Members of Parliament, Parliamentary Papers, p. 181) and who has property in Winchelsea in 1358 (S. C., xxviii. p. 92), and was bailiff of Rye by royal appointment in 49 Edw. III (Abbrev. Rot. Original., ii. p. 336). A Robert Baddyng was master of the Gabriell in 46 Edw. III, and of the Bayarde between 43 and 49 Edw. III (Record Office, E. B. 380 ⁸⁰/₈₄). He is probably the same person as the M.P. for Winchelsea in 1371 (Return of Members, p. 187). From the Rolls of Parliament, i. p. 413, it appears that a John Badding with other sailors of the Cinque Ports entered a vessel of John Huchoun and Thomas Peverell of Sherborne in 1321-2, and carried off twenty-four livres worth of goods. Another John Baddyng was M.P. for Rye on six occasions between 1386 and 1407 (Return of Members, pp. 230-273). We may conjecture that it was some person connected with these whom Minot celebrates.

62. So, 'Lyghtly walde þey it noghte yelde | To þay had foughtten paire fill,' The Sege off Melayne, 212, 13.

63. Jan van Eyle or Heylle was a leading citizen of Sluys. He belonged to the Leliaert party, and had gone into exile with Count Louis of Flanders. He was in command of the Christopher, was taken prisoner and, though a large ransom was offered, was beheaded before the Halle in Bruges. De Klerk, 1289-98.

64. Cadzant is the name of a village in the province of Zeeland, arrondissement of Middelburgh, on the south bank of the mouth of the Scheldt, and also of the island between the village and Walcheren.

67. 'Ulterius, die illucente et cognito quod triginta naves affugerunt, misit dominus rex xl. naves bene munitas ad illas insequendas, quibus preposuit Johannem Crabbe, quem periciorem in arte navali et cognicione portuum Francorum Anglici reputarunt,' Le Baker, p. 69.

69. Whoever knew his business might show it there, i. e. it was a good opportunity for the skilful sailor. For the alliteration comp. 'Sche nolde kype us his name, | For craft þat we couþe,' Swete Susan, 233, 4; 'Maumecet couþe ful wel þat craft: and put him anon þar-to,' Sir Ferumbas, 1312; 'þat mercy schal hyr crafte; kype,' The Pearl, 356; Mätzner, Alteng. Sprachproben, i. 60/131; Amis, p. xlix.

70. Apparently means that they were allowed to keep their booty, without deduction. Comp. 'þe English knafes tok the pilfre of the Scottes þat were quellede, euery man þat he myght take, wiþout eny chalange of eny man,' Brut, ed. Brie, i. 286 (of Halidon Hill).

73. Hemingburgh, ii. 356, says they recovered the Edward, the Katherine and the Rose, three very large 'cogs.' Murimuth, p. 106, mentions the Christopher and the Black Cog as recaptured. From Geoffrey le Baker and Murimuth we learn the names of two of the

French ships taken, the Denis and the George. Comp. for the alliterative formula, iv. 47, and, 'Whan he of bond was brouht for ransoun þat was riche,' Langtoft, i. p. 201; 'Because of yone bald berne that broght me of bandis,' Golagrus, 1316 (Anglia, ii. p. 439).

75. with *stremers ful still*, as no longer hostile to the English. The streamer, a very long flag, was a warlike ensign; see in Nicolas, ii. p. 182, an instance in which vessels going on a peaceful mission are forbidden to carry them.

77. *wurthi in wall*. Comp. 'To wynne the worthiest within the wall,' Squyr of Lowe Degre, 634; 'That er wes wildest in with walle,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Society), p. 48. The phrase has arisen out of an older and misunderstood *worthy in wale*, or *worthy to wale*, choice, which occurs in, 'Schir Wawine wourthy to wail,' Golagrus, 982 (Anglia, ii. p. 432); 'Lo! here a worthy wyff to wale,' Wyntoun, v. 5085; 'And worthy wemen to wale weping with teris,' Troy Book, 9112; 'Thar Hesylyrg duelt, that curssynt knyght to waill,' Wallace, v. 574, and vii. 302, 3; Sir Degrevant, 1872.

78. Nicolas notes that Minot is the only English writer who speaks of the king's personal bravery in the battle. But he is in accord with Le Bel, 'Maiz le roy Edowart se maintint si vassaument, et faisoit de si grands proesses de son propre corps, que il resbandissoit (re-animated) et donnoit cuer à tous les aultres,' i. p. 172; and with De Klerk, 'Die coninc was, wien lief wien leet, | Bi den iersten daer men street, | Ende vacht mitter hant so sere | Dat wonder was van selken here,' 1253-6. He was wounded in the thigh, according to the Chronique de Berne (Istore et Croniques de Flandres, i. p. 589). For, *faire mot him fall*, comp. 'Now fare myght you fall for youre talkyng,' Towneley Plays, 232/127; 'feyre, syrrys, mote yow be falle,' Le Bone Florence, 198.

82. *till þat gude dede*, to that fair feat of arms, as in, 'Alle the world he hath justid with, | That come to that dede,' Torrent of Portyn-gale, 2399, 400. Comp. F. fait (d'armes), 'car je ne fu pas à celi fait,' Joinville.

86. *boste*. Comp. vi. 20, note.

VI.

The Siege of Tournay.

Immediately after the victory of Sluys, Edward held a council at Ghent, and another at Vilvorde, where it was decided to besiege Tournay. Philip, recognizing the importance of the place, threw into it a strong reinforcement under the Constable, while he himself took up a position between Lens and Arras with seventy thousand men.

Edward, with not less than one hundred and twenty thousand men, began the siege on the 23rd of July. An attempt to take the place by storm failing, the allied forces maintained a strict blockade and ravaged the surrounding country. On the 7th of September Philip advanced to Bouvines, but he was advised that Edward's position was unassailable, and he made no effort to relieve the besieged, who were by that time reduced to extremity. But just when Edward's triumph seemed certain, negotiations for a truce were entered upon, and the articles were signed at Esplechin on the 25th of September. It is difficult to believe that Edward relinquished his great advantage for the reasons usually assigned. The intercession of the Countess of Hainault, the want of money, the long duration of the siege, the approach of autumn, had not so much weight with the king as the knowledge that through the treachery of the Duke of Brabant his allies could not be kept any longer in the field. (Le Bel. *Chronique de Tournay*. *Chronique de Berne*. Oudegherst. Meyer.)

The poem is supposed by Wright and Bierbaum to have been written before Edward was obliged to abandon the siege. At least ll. 60-70 must have been composed after that event, for the Duke of Brabant did not go till the treaty of which he was one of the principal negotiators had been signed. On the other hand, the mocking and triumphant tone of the preceding lines points to anticipated and almost assured success. Probably the original ballad ended with l. 56, followed by ll. 71-78; the poet when rearranging and revising his works inserted the explanatory lines 60-70, added the awkward transition lines 57-59 (with the past tense *was fain*), and lines 79-81, to correspond. The intentional vagueness of the rhyming couplet prefixed to the poem marks it as belonging to the later revision.

1-4. Tournay, a boar with corselets (warriors) who is brought before your walls has purposed to build for you sorrow and trouble. For examples of the omission of the relative, see Koch, *Eng. Gram.* ii. § 362. Wright, following Ritson, takes *timber* to mean destruction; but it is a verb, as in 'for teone ne for tintreohe þ 3e me mahe timbrin,' S. Juliana, 19/3; 'Hit schalle be tynte, as I troue, and timburt with tene,' Anturs of Arther, xxii; 'Whan þe Danes were out, þat timbred him his tene,' Langtoft, i. p. 45; 'And þat hath tymberde all my teene,' Le Bone Florence, 560; Awntyrs of Arthure, 281; Lazamon, 6619, 20, 28209. The phrase *tray and tene* is mostly northern: add to the collection in Brandl, Thomas of Erceldoune, p. 134, 'þat liueþ in treye & tene,' Amis, 1572; 'Wit outen ten, wit outen trai, Small, Metrical Homilies, p. 133; 'And went hir þeþen in tene and trei,' Cursor, 10472, & 17050; William of Palerne, 2073. *brenis may*

mean a single coat of mail, that of the boar; comp. 'And woundede sir Rowlande wonder sore, | thurgh his brenyes brighte,' Rowland and Otuell, 1397, 8; 'Thane was he warre of a wye wondyre wele armyde, | Buskede in brenyes bryghte to behalde,' Morte Arthure, 2515, 7. But it may also mean warriors; if so, it is repeated in *with schilterouns* of l. 6. bare, boar, as in Sir Tristrem, 824, 5, 'Heuedes of wild bare | Ichon to presant brouyt.' It is a common designation of Edw. III, 'Tertius Edwardus, aper Anglicus et leopardus,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 27; Walsingham, Hist. Anglic., i. p. 274, describes him when angry, 'frendens apri more.' See vii. 9. For line 4, comp. vii. 21, and viii. 20.

5. See Amis, p. li, and Athelston, p. 350, for examples of this combination collected from the romances.

9. went, so in similar alliterations, 'And þi worship is went & wastid for euer,' Troy Book, 8118; 'ffor nowe my wirchipe es wente, and my were endide,' Morte Arthure, 3957.

10. wakkins, is aroused, begins. Comp. 'Thare wakkyns woo fulle wyde,' Sir Isumbras, 227, 323, 419; 'Wer wakyn & wo for þi wickede dede,' Troy Book, 1404, 2046, 8183; 'Lat twinne þem in two, | For now waknes þeir wo,' Swete Susan, 296, 7; 'I schal waken vp a water to wasch alle þe worlde,' Cleanness, 323.

12. on ilka syde. See i. 19 note, and comp. 'Swiche meting was neuer made, | Wiþ sorwe on ich a side,' Horn Childe, 185, 6.

13. rent is sometimes used vaguely for income, what is to be expected by way of return, what is one's due. Scholle quotes Alisaunder, 1847, 8, 'In justis and fyghtis n'ys non othir rent, | Bote strokis, and knokkis and hard deontis.' Comp. also, Richard, 4056; '& seyð, To day ich 3eld 3our rentes | Wiþ hard woundes & deþ dentes,' A. & M., 147/5219, 20, 218/7800. So in Cursor, 19594, 5, 'It fell saint petre als for rent, | To call men vnto amendment,' it has a similar meaning, what is assigned as one's province; in N. E. D. explained as, privilege.

15. hent, seized, received. It often occurs in this connection, as in 'Mony harmys þai hent er hor helpe come,' Troy Book, 5778; 'For ofte harmes were hente * þat helpe we ne myzte,' Cheuelere Assigne, 3. Bearing in mind the great elaboration of Minot's alliteration, and looking to the analogy of such places as, 'We mot holde to oure harmes * it helpes nouȝt elles,' William of Palerne, 3988; 'Holde at þow hente has, it harmez bot lyttille,' Morte Arthure, 1842, we are tempted to read holde in l. 16, and holdis in l. 17. We should then have in l. 17 a medial alliteration of *d* thrice. But comp. 'He will þe preist þam hele and hide,' Cursor, 27437.

17. als hende, as quickly as possible. M.E. *hende*, *hend*, representing O.E. *gehende*, is a derivative of *hand* with the same development of meaning as Germ. *anständig*, at hand, proper, pleasing, and as *adv.* near,

promptly, quickly : for the latter, comp. 'tak vp tentis and truse hem hom hend,' Roland fragment, 48. It appears to interchange meanings with *hendy*, O.E. *-hendig*, dexterous, as at ix. 37, Havelok, 2628. For *als*, comp. 'Thei toke leue as tyde and jede | To here schippis with mechel spede,' Laud Troy Book, 2725, 6; 'And he graunted as sone here bone,' id. 3441.

18. **cast in care**, see v. 7, ix. 60, and compare, 'Of þe smal þat was so swote, | Þre hundred sike hadde her bote, | & cast were out of care,' Roland and Vernagu, 107-9; 'þa3 he be kest into kare, he kepes no better,' Cleanness, 234; and Cursor, 25705.

20. **frankis fare**, lit. French behaviour, hence boastful show, assumption of superiority, such as the French affected. Comp. 'He (Christ) es made of manhede | for all his frankis fare,' Harrowing, 1293. There is another example in Mätzner, ii. p. 202. In John de Reeue, P. F. MS. ii. 590/826, Chester Mysteries (E. E. T. S.), 51/100, and Sir Gawayne, 1116, *frenkysch fare* means fine manners. Comp. further, i. 25, vii. 118, x. 5, xi. 18; 'I forsaike noght to feight for al his grete feir,' Golagruss, 810 (Anglia, ii. p. 428); 'Her leffe es strekyne down, I wene | For all his freshe fare,' Ipomadon, 4341, 2; Bruce, ix. 137; Sir Degrevant, 1243, 4; Morte Arthure, 2225, 2744. For charges of boastfulness against the French, comp. l. 26, i. 45, v. 86; 'The Frensche men kunne bothe bost and blowe. | And with heore scornes us to-threte,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 218; 'The Frensche folke wyth mekyll myghte | In thwerte wyles they were wyke,' Ipomadon, 5769, 70; 'I say, lady Prudence, howe the Frenchemen be great braggers, bosters and mangnifyers of them selves dyspraysynge all nacions savyng them selves,' Le Débat des Hérauts, p. 58; 'Þe Ffrenssche men be couaytous. | Whenne þey sytte at þe tauerne, | Þere þey be stoute & sterne | Bostfful wurdes ffor to crake, | And off here dedes jelpyng to make. | Lytyl wurþ þey are and nyce prowde, | Ffyzte þey kunne wiþ wurdes lowde, | And telle no man is here pere; | But whene þey comen to þe mystere, | And see men begynne strokes dele, | Anon þey gynne to turne here hele, | And gynne to drawe in here hornes | As a snayl among þe þornes,' Richard, 3852-64.

22. **at**. Comp. 'A womon is bothe warre & wyse | Grette loue & lykyng in them lyse | Who lyste to lere at there lore,' Ipomadon, 7088-90. But the usual preposition is *on* or *upon*; 'I wol leue my lay | And on þi lore lere,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 207/262; '3if þou wilt leue opon mi lare,' Amis, 356. In the Cursor Mundi there are three variations of the phrase; 'lere on noe lare,' 1832, 'þai louted til his lare,' 4683 MS. Fairfax; 'To leten on his lare,' 15614; and the last occurs in Small's Metrical Homilies with *at*; 'When we thynk how thai sall far | That wyll noght lete at Cristes lare,' p. 66. The uncommon construction without any preposition occurs in 'For Eue

hadde leued his lore,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 142/247, Early English Poems (Phil. Soc.), 5/verse 35, and Laȝamon, 29022.

23. This line is literally, It needs for you now to bend no bows, i. e. You need now bend no bows, you may give up fighting. *Thar* is impersonal, and *ȝow* is the dative of the agent. Comp. 'Him thar not winnen wel, that evil doth,' Chaucer, quoted in Koch, ii. p. 33; 'Aftur oþur matere þar þe nouȝt crane,' Horst., A. L., i. 48/389. Dr. Einenkel (Anglia, vii. Anz. p. 112) explains, No bows need now bend for you, or, taking into account the confusion between *þurfen* and *durren* in M.E., venture to bend. But this would require *þurfen* and would not be idiomatic. Scholle's alteration, No bowes er for ȝow bende, is unnecessary.

25. *bare*, deprived of. See a collection of examples of this common alliterative phrase in Amis, p. xlix. Others are, 'Quo his bidding brekes, bare is of blis,' Anturs of Arther, xix; 'The ixthe day wyth mekyll care | Maketh us of blysse bare,' The 15 Tokens, 217, 8 (Anglia, iii. p. 538); William of Palerne, 3958.

27. *mis*, fail to get, Comp. 'Mi merci sal þou neuer mis,' Cursor, 17202; 'Man may mysse þe myrþe þat much is to prayse,' E. E. Allit. Poems, 43/189.

30. *to fote*, at the feet of your people. See iv. 59, note; and comp. 'All fell him down to fote and hand,' Cursor, 680 (*fete* in 11450); 'Y wol the serve to hond and fot,' Alisaunder, 6726; Sir Tristrem, 902 note; Laud Troy Book, 131.

31. *were*. Scholle suggests that this word = *weder*, ram, battering-ram, but this meaning would not go well with *wrote*, to turn up with the snout. Besides *weder*, Goth. *wiprus*, O.S. *withar*, O.H.G. *wider*, etc., all retain the dental. Were is war here as in vii. 71. Comp. 'Bot herder were to þe es wrought,' Horst., A. L., ii. 106/64 (where the original, the Aurea Legenda, has 'sed majora tibi debentur pro fide Christi certamina'); and 'Where this Geant were procured and wrought,' Partenay, 4056. *Werc*, fortification, is combined with the same verb as in 'I wyll þou wyrke, with-owten weyn | A warke to saffe þi-selfe wyth all,' York Plays, 41/35, 6; Laȝamon, 16971; the corrupt line, Sir Gowther, 324, may be restored, Of the werc well wroȝt. The siege was remarkable for the engines which were used by the besiegers. Firearms were first employed there to any great extent. 'Sire Edward nostre roy fist faire assaut à la dite cyté de Torneye sis fois (= fois) le jour ove springals et magnels gettauntz grosses pierres, engyns ove poudres, feu rosée, issint qe les engyns ove les grosses pieres debriserent les toures et les fort mures,' A French Chronicle of London (Camden Society, 1844), p. 79. Lettenhove, Froissart, iii. p. 496.

32. With which to undermine your walls. For the inversion of the

word order, comp. 'þat I seke myȝt anyont wiþ be,' Cursor, 17936; 'To amende wiþ my liuing,' Horst., A. L., i. 69/462.

34. Comp. 'No more dowe the dynte of theire derfe wapyns,' Morte Arthure, 312.

35. See ii. 20, note.

41. in **land** is a mere alliterative tag, like the frequent *on mold*. Comp. 'þat lorde þat lennes vs lyffe | To lere his lawes in lande,' York Plays, 52/219; 'God let me neuyr dye in lande,' Guy, 5841, and the collection of examples in the note.

43. at **hand**, near. Comp. 'And now is nedfull for noye, þat neghis at hond,' Troy Book, 11537.

47. See v. 73, note.

48. Or, ere, before. Shakspeare, Tempest, i. 2. 11, has *or ere*; see Koch, ii. § 516. **brought on bere**. Comp. 'In Surry he sall shew A syght | And in babylone bringe mony on one ber,' Bernardus, 20/67, 8; 'Betwene them burgenyd such a bravnche | That in þer lyves schall neuer stavnche | Tille they on bere be brought,' Ipomadon, 1268-70; 'Boldlye on bere they can them bringe,' Percy Folio MS., iii. 257/606.

51. **haldes ȝow noght**, does not keep his promises to you.

54. **þe right gate**, by the shortest way. Comp. 'þe graythest gate,' vii. 48; 'They ryde the ryght gate | Even to the castell yate,' Lybeaus (Ritson), 1516, 7; 'Þou shalt ride sporeles o þy lyard | Al þe ryhte way to douere ward,' Böddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 100/46, 7.

56. To bar Philip the way. **Ful still** is a tag. Comp. 'Be he never so mych a shrewe, | Heys nedes schul be sped, | Ful styll,' Poem on Edward II (Percy Society), p. 4; Sir Tristrem, 1461, 2704.

58. Philip was glad that he had it in his power to give Edward his way, i. e. he was glad to be able to retreat.

60-70. John the Third of Brabant was one of Edward's principal allies. His conduct had all along been marked by great caution and a determination to secure himself in either event of the war. During his first negotiations with Edward, and while making preparations to join him, he sent repeated assurances of his loyalty to Philip, and deputed one of his chief counsellors, Louis de Cranehem, to the court of the French king to neutralize the bad effects of any reports which might reach Philip from Brabant. 'Ainsy vouloit le dit duc de Brabant nager entre deux yawes,' Le Bel, i. pp. 136, 147-151. The poor counsellor became so ashamed and confused at the manifest contradiction between his statements and the acts of his master that he did not venture back to Brabant, but died of grief in France. After much shuffling the duke joined Edward and was present at Flamengerie with a large force, but he had apparently given Philip some reason to count on his defection. At Tournay his followers, who formed a large part of the

allied forces, were placed next to the English troops, because, as Lettenhove thinks, of Edward's distrust of his ally. This, Villani says (xi. c. 112), was well founded. But Froissart and the Flemish chroniclers do not connect him with the abandonment of the siege. Le Bel tells at length how the men of Brussels received money from Philip and distributed it among the captains of the Brabançons, who thereupon told the duke they would not remain any longer in the field. He, however, acquits the duke of all complicity in the affair; he describes his confusion when he discovered the intrigue and the punishment he inflicted on certain of Philip's agents when they fell into his hands afterwards (i. p. 175-194). Villani also speaks of the effect of Philip's money, but he sets down the corruption of the men to the bad example of their leader: 'Ma i Brabanzoni sentendo il trattato che menava il loro duca, et per la corruzione della moneta del re di Francia . . . feciono punta falsa, e subitamente si levarono da campo et tornarono in loro paese.'

62. *brwed þat bale*, devised that mischief. See Mätzner under *brewen*, 2. for examples, and comp. 'Rouland wiþ durindale | Brewe him miche bale,' Roland and Vernagu, 560, 1; 'Him þoughte to brewen him a bale | wel ille,' Celestin, 228, 9 (Anglia, i. p. 73); 'And us is brewed þis harde bale | þat we shall hope be forlorn,' Body and Soul, 351, 2 (Anglia, ii. p. 239); 'Alas! y am worsse than wode | Myn owne bale for to brewe,' Political, Relig. and Love Poems, 100/213, 4; Octavian, 53/1707; Laud Troy Book, 3411.

63. 'Les Brabanchons s'en commencèrent à aler hastivement, car grand désir en avoient,' Le Bel, i. p. 190.

65. *On his side*, a mere alliterative tag which repeats *him*.

66. I have not found any other example of this phrase. Wright explains *gale* as song, noise, which gives no sense here. It is perhaps connected with Icel. *galli*, fault, flaw; Dan. *gal*, wrong; Swed. *gall*, sterile; Eng. dialectic *gall*, a spot in a field where the crop has failed. If so it might mean wrong, mischief. The word occurs again in, 'þo sede he icham a deuel.' ich hote belial, | Aþen ech mannes good dede.' ich can do luþer gal,' Seyn Julian, 83, 4, which Mätzner gives under *galle*, *gall* (O.E. *gealla*), a word distinct from the former, but probably connected with it. See Gall, sb.² in N.E.D.

67. For the alliteration comp. 'Nay, sir, we will oure batells guy, | And rape vs for to ryde,' Rowland and Otuell, 254, 5; P. Plowman, C. 349/48.

68. *Till dede*. If this is taken literally, 'to his death,' as Wright explains it, it is unhappy, for the Duke of Brabant did not die till 1355. It may, however, be used freely and poetically for 'so as to come to grief.' But *rede*, counsel, plotting, would restore the alliteration and give a good sense. For the phrase, comp. 'At morne þei toke to rede | And

seteltes vp soght,' York Plays, 341/113, 4; 'þe Iwes token hem to red,' Engl. Studien, ix. 46/239; 'þe traytours of Scotlond token hem to rede, | þe barouns of Engelond to brynge to dede,' Bōddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 133/225, 6; Laȝamon, 19239; Horn Childe, 214, mostly in a bad sense. *Radly* in the previous line would restore the internal alliteration of *d* in the three words.

70. This accusation against Edward's German allies occurs pretty frequently in contemporary writers. So, John of Bridlington, 'Strident Germani nummorum tempore sani, | Frendent Barbari (Brabançons) ambo nummis sine vani,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 146. On the other hand, Lettenhove, speaking of the Flemish at Tournay, says, 'Tous ces bourgeois, que leurs ennemis accusaient d'être excités par l'or des Anglais, avaient déclaré qu'afin de venir en aide à la cause du pays ils voulaient servir sans solde,' La Flandre Communale, p. 205.

71. *frely fode*, a nobly nurtured one, a common epithet in the romances for a courteous knight or lady. See Amis, p. xlix, for a collection of examples; others are, 'þaa fals, þaa felun fode,' Cursor, MS. Gött., 16452; Sir Tristrem, 193, 369, 2987; Sir Perceval, 38; Bruce, iii. 578. Mätzner explains it as food, *alimentum*, extended to mean that which is fed, *alumnus*. To *feed* has the sense of, to educate in 'Nas neuer non fairer fedde,' Sir Tristrem, 161; 'þat freoly ys to fede,' Bōddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 157/45; 'ffarwell, the frelyst that euer was fed,' Towneley Plays, 203/257.

75. Comp. 'Ffor hym that ryste on the rode,' Awntyrs of Arthure, 230.

77. *main and mode*, might and main. Mätzner, Alteng. Sprachproben, i. p. 38, gives examples from O.E. poetry. Comp. also, 'Scho blewe hir horne with mayne and mode,' Thomas of Erceldoune, 251, 279, 362: 'And len vs, lord, swilk mode and mayn | þat we tak neuer þi name in vayn,' Cursor, 25227, 8; 'þou sal hir serue wit mode and mayn,' id. 2624; Ywain, 1031.

VII.

Edward's March through Normandy. The Battle of Crécy.

Edward embarked at Porchester on the 2nd of July, apparently with the intention of going to Gascony. But being prevented by contrary winds he altered his plans and disembarked on the 12th of July at La Hogue to march to Calais. He rested his troops in the neighbourhood till the 18th, his fleet in the meantime burning Barfleur. On the 18th he reached Valognes, on the 20th he was in Carentan, and two days later at Saint-Lô. On the 26th he reached Caen, a town bigger in

Michael de Northburgh's opinion than any in England, except London. It was vigorously defended by the inhabitants and a considerable body of soldiers gathered there under the Comte d'Eu, the Constable and the sire de Tancarville. The fight was hottest at a bridge which connected the halves of the town. At last, but not without considerable loss, the English remained in possession of the place, where they stayed three days, and found the famous agreement made in 1338 between the Normans and Philip for the conquest of England. From Caen they proceeded to Lisieux, which they reached on the 2nd of August. Meanwhile Philip had assembled a large force at Rouen, which occupied the right bank of the Seine and destroyed the bridges. Edward still advanced on the left bank to find a place to cross the river, and burnt Louviers and other towns. On the 13th he reached Poissy, and finding the bridge broken here also, he decided to stay and repair it. While this was being done the English made raids right up to the gates of Paris. On the day of his arrival at Poissy, Edward had received an offer of combat from Philip, to which he had replied that he was going in the direction of Montfort, and that if any one wanted him he could be found there. Philip, thinking that Edward was going to the south, fell back to Antony. Meanwhile the bridge was repaired, and on the 16th Edward crossed to the right bank and beat the communes of Amiens (l. 93) who were marching to join Philip's army south of Paris. The English now proceeded due north to Calais, passing by Beauvais, Poix, and Airaines, while Philip followed hard in pursuit till he halted at Amiens and received reinforcements, bringing up his army to 100,000 men. When the English reached the Somme they found the enemy everywhere in force on the right bank, and they marched towards its mouth only to find the bridge at Abbeville strongly held. At last they succeeded in crossing the ford of Blanquetaque notwithstanding the resistance of Godemar du Fay and his 12,000 men. Philip coming up soon after, learned that the English had succeeded, and he returned to the bridge at Abbeville. Edward meanwhile marched towards Crécy during the 25th. The battle followed on the 26th. On the next day two large detachments of French soldiers marching to join Philip were met by the English and defeated with great slaughter. (Avesbury. Murimuth. Nangis. *Chronique Normande*. *Chronique d'un Bourgeois de Valenciennes*. Le Bel. Froissart. Le Baker (in the note, pp. 252-257, the king's route from La Hogue to Calais is very fully made out). There is a good account of the battle in Louandre, *Histoire d'Abbeville*, 1834, pp. 129-157: much of it is given in a paper, *Archæologia*, xxviii. p. 171.

The comparative length of the poem is noteworthy; like viii. it may have been formed by the fusion of two ballads originally distinct. But

no joint is perceptible at l. 101, where the new topic, Crécy, is introduced. The stanzas are linked together throughout the poem, except at 92, 93, where the break perhaps indicates the loss of one or more verses. The last stanza is plainly a later addition intended to connect this with the next poem; the abruptness of the past tense in l. 167 and the introductory formula in l. 169 point to this.

1. The romance writers frequently refer in this way to their sources, real or imaginary. Comp. 'Off here dedys men rede romaunce,' Richard, 9; 'Her may 3e here yn romaunce ryȝt,' Octavian, 57/1811; 'As it is wyten in Romance | And founden in bookes of Antiquyte,' Sowdone of Babylone, 25, 6; 'As the boke of Rome doth tell,' Torrent of Portyngale, 2183; Amis, p. xliii. The same meaning is conveyed by 'Thus seyde the Frensch tale,' Launfal, 474. The term *Romani* was applied by writers of the fourth century to all who lived within the limits of the Empire, and as early at least as the fifth century *Romania* appears as a common name for the united Latin area. Hence *romanice loqui*, to speak the vulgar Latin as distinguished from the book language. So, 'Bien sauoit Aiols lire et enbrieuer | Et latin et romans sauoit parler,' Aiol et Mirabel, 275, 6.

2. The traditions which went by the name of Ambrosius Merlin's prophecies among the Welsh were probably first gathered and reduced to writing by Geoffrey of Monmouth about 1132 A.D. Towards the end of the century they found a commentator in the universal doctor Alanus de Insulis (Alain de Lille). The vague generalities of which for the most part they consisted were, with the residue of unwritten tradition, taken as the groundwork of new prophecies, or explained by the light of accomplished fact. The collection of prophecy thus set afloat was generally received by the English and French. So Langtoft expresses the popular feeling in his 'Ha, Deus! ke Merlyn dist sovent veritez | En ses propheceyez', (Wright's ed. ii. p. 264). Comp. also, Arthour & Merlin, p. 353, l. 179, foll. In the MS. which contains Minot's poems there is a version which was plainly written with a view to discredit Henry the Fourth: it is printed in the Appendix, piece ii. (See for further information, San Marte (Schulz), Die Sagen von Merlin, Halle, 1853; Villemarqué, L'Enchanteur Merlin, and Ward's Catalogue of Romances in the British Museum.) There was another prophecy of Merlin Silvester called the prophecy of the Eagle, and recorded in Lives of Edward the Confessor (Rolls Series), p. 431. Of this some use is made by Giraldus Cambrensis in his *Expugnatio Hibernica*. See his works, vol. v. p. 40.

3, 4. Comp. 'ȝe touȝer foure ȝys clerkys wytyn, | For yn ȝe byble ȝey ben wrytyn,' R. of Brunne, Handlyng Synne, 409, 10; 'He wrot

a boc dat manige witen | Manige tidinge ðor on is writen,' Genesis and Exodus, 523, 4; 'There in latin was it wretin | As clerkes wele known and weten,' Gonerides, 27, 28; 'Þis clerkes witen as wel as I,' Engl. Stud. xiv. 185/50; 'In Frenssche bookys þis rym is wrouȝt | Lewede men ne knowe it nouȝt,' Richard, 21, 22.

7. The passage in the Vaticinium Merlini which was generally taken as referring to Edward the Third is, 'Superveniet aper commercii, qui dispersos greges ad amissa pascua revocabit. Pectus eius cibus erit egentibus, et lingua eius sedabit sitientes.' See Appendix ii. 143-188. Comp. also, 'Et bien le dist li rois Robers de Cecille, de Naples et de Jherusalem, que li senglers de Windesore ficeroit encores ses dens moult parfont ens ès portes de Paris, et chils Edouwars est li senglers de Windesore ensi que dient les propheties de Merlin selonch le livre de Bructus,' Froissart, Luce, ii. p. 226. There is a remarkable poem printed in Bernardus (E. E. T. S. No. 42), p. 23, the prophecy of Thomas à Becket, written, I think, to encourage the English in the expedition of 1360. But ll. 106-144 are full of allusions to this campaign of 1346, to the siege of Calais, and the capture of King David at Neville's Cross. The prophecy of Thomas of Erceldoune, written in the beginning of the fifteenth century, has also several references to the events of Edward the Third's reign; and another prophecy relating to the Scotch wars of this time is printed in Langtoft's Chronicle (Rolls Series), ii. p. 452.

16. Lit. to great damage for the whole French people, resulting in the grievous mischief of the French. Comp. 'To his sune he heo draf.' him seolfue to balewe,' *Lazamon*, 309.

17. Comp. John of Bridlington, 'Sunt mihi materia de tauro plura notare,' Wright, *Pol. Poems*, i. p. 152.

19. **my wit es thin**, my ability is slight. Comp. 'The childes witt was fulle thynne,' *Sir Perceval*, 275; 'Oc for I the so eise fond, | And thi wretche wit so thynne,' Mätzner, *Alteng. Sprach.* i. 97/229, 30; 'so is youre wyttys thyn,' *Towneley Plays*, 105/172; 'And my witte was our̃ thynne,' *R. of Brunne, Chron.*, 113; Langtoft, i. p. c.

21. **on bankes bare**. See viii. 20. The phrase is a reminiscence of the romances. Comp. 'To beker atte the barrens, in bonkes so bare,' *Anturs of Arther*, iv; 'A Bore com from A bank wondirly boistous,' *Roland fragment*, 94; 'Now is roulond redy with his rout faire | For to abid at a bank with barons thar,' *id.* 232, 3; 'This ber salbe buskede in A banke syde,' *Bernardus*, 27/127. If the phrase means much, it is, the boar has taken the field in open country.

23. **Iohn of France**, the Duke of Normandy, the eldest son of Philip. Born in 1319, he became duke of Normandy in 1331, succeeded to the throne in 1350 and died in 1364. At this moment he was besieging Mont Aguillon in Guienne; he abandoned it on the 20th of August to

join his father. He reached Agen on the 23rd, and Moissac on the 25th, but the battle, for which he was too late (l. 51), was fought on the following day (Chronique Normande, p. 276).

25. **proper and prest**, the nearest approach to this phrase I have found is 'prowde and preste,' Syr Tryamoure, 883.

34. **Hende God, þat heried hell**. For *hende*, gracious, thus applied, comp. 'Bot dryghtin dere þat ai es hend | A curtais wrak on þam he send,' Cursor, 2255, 6. The Harrowing of Hell, the descent of Christ into hell to set free the souls imprisoned there, was a popular subject in England from the tenth century (ten Brink, English Literature, p. 111; Hulme, The M.E. Harrowing of Hell, pp. lx-lxx). The source from which it was taken was the apocryphal Evangelium Nichodemi. At least as early as the thirteenth century it was treated in a miracle play (Mall, The Harrowing of Hell; Bøddeker, Alteng. Dicht., pp. 264-284, &c.), and the four cycles of religious plays contain each a drama on the subject (York Mysteries, p. lxiii). Other evidences of its influence on M.E. literature will be found in Blickling Homilies, 85; Cursor Mundi, ll. 18073-352; the long poem of Cotton, Galba, E. ix.; in the fine passage of Piers Plowman, C. 382/261-442 (on which see Skeat's note); in þe Deuelis Parlament, ll. 233-416, and in Death and Liffe, Percy Folio MS., iii. 72/384-429. References to it are also frequent.

39. **Hogges**. Saint Vaast-de-la-Hougue, département de Manche, arrondissement de Valognes, canton de Quettehou.

41. They made a great display of ability against him. Comp. 'Wyste þou what maystres I covthe make | My service wold thou not forsake,' Ipomadon, 6400, 1; 'To mar theym that siche mastery mase,' Towneley Plays, 296/110; 'i vndirtake | þat þer wille none swylke maystres make,' Octavian, 117/786, 7.

45. **pride in prese**. See i. 90 and vii. 109. This is a favourite alliteration of the romance writers: comp. 'Pas agane, Porter, and let him swyith in | Amang the proudest in preis, plesand in pane,' Coilþear, 623, 4; 'And mony proud mon þer presed, þat prynce to honour,' Gawayne, 830, which show that *pres* means the throng of courtiers. But here and in i. 90 it means the confusion of battle, as is further shown by, 'And als for oure lemmanys luwe | Off pres yhit a poynt we pruwe,' Wyntoun, viii. 2569, 70; 'Wyth pes or pres sa sal we prowe | That sege to skaile or gere remove,' id. ix. 3041, 2. In such cases *proud* is probably a variation arising out of *proved*, and perhaps helped by a confusion with F. *preux*, O.F. *prou*, as in 'Prynces proved in pres,' Syr Tryamoure, 969; 'Let mee be proued as Prince · in pres where I wend,' Alisaunder fragment, 1200. Other variations are 'To be proued for pris · & prest of hemselue,' id. 6; 'There was mekylle

pres in pryde, | When eche man began to ryde,' Syr Tryamour, 730, 1. See also Sir Tristrem, 57 note.

48. Cane, Caen. 'Et lors alerent droit à Caen . . . et le conte d'Eu à tout bien IIII. mil combatans et le conte de Tancarville prindrent à garder la ville, ce que on appelle l'Ille, et là ot grande bataille et merveillense à la porte Sainte Pierre dessus le pont, mais la dicte ille estoit mauvaisement close et la rivière estoit basse, par quoy les Anglois entrèrent par pluseurs lieux en la ville et encloirent les François au dos qui combatoient au pont,' Chronique Normande, p. 75, 6; 'at þe brigge of Cadomy, manly & orpudly ystrengþed and defended wiþ Normannes, he had þere a stronge batayll, & a longe-duryng, þoru; which grete multitud of people was slayn,' Brut, ed. Brie, ii. 298. Minot's numbers in ll. 50, 55 are much exaggerated. The *stif on stede* is a mere *cheville*. The men who made so good a fight against the English were mostly burghers and therefore *pitaile*.

50. *stif on stede* is much the same as 'stout on stede,' i. 54. Comp. 'Mene that bolde were to hyde | And styff appone stede,' Sir Perceval, 1471, 2; Octavian, 158/1578. In this and other alliterative phrases *stif* alternates with *stith*, stout, brave, so 'Wiþ kniȝtes stiþe on stede,' Sir Tristrem, 66, 3014 note; 'Gain hethin folk was stijf in stur,' Cursor, Cotton, 21382, where the corresponding line in MS. Fairfax has 'Againe heþin folk stiþe in stoure.' Comp. also Troy Book, 5474; Richard, 1631.

53. *blede*. Comp. 'Alle þat he hutte, he made hem blede,' King of Tars, V. 190.

if *þai war bolde*, notwithstanding their bravery, which gives a sufficient sense. But the analogy of such places as 'þai broght þe dwergh, þat be ȝe balde,' Ywain, 2781, 'And he was broþer, be ze balde, | Of Polimius þat I of talde,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 123/341, 2, suggests that Minot may have used here the same formula of assurance.

58. *dance*, play, here and at l. 74, apparently the 'hard hand-play' of fighting: at i. 66 the phrase appears to mean, their game is up. Comp. 'They seyde, Syr, þe kyng of Fraunce | Myghte abate all þys daunce,' Octavian, 3/38; 'I shall lede the a dawnce | Vnto sir pilate hall,' Towneley Plays, 245/80. But neither example is quite like Minot's use.

59. A detail after the manner of the romances. Comp. 'Some in þe hals so hytte hee, | Þat helme & hed fleyȝ into þe see,' Richard, 2575, 6; Langtoft, ii. p. 267.

64. See note on viii. 94.

65. *with site þam soght*, attacked them with sorrow. *Soght* is used of meeting with hostile intent as in 'Lundy him saw and sadly on him socht,' Wallace, viii. 376. Comp. for the phrase, 'And therefore

syte is to paym sought,' York Plays, 29/16. So American slang, 'to go for.'

66. Comp. 'Therefore but 3e quyte me my hyre,' E. E. Misc. (Warton Club), 8/5; 'I schal the qwite wel thi mede,' Laud Troy Book, 3929; 'But Ector quynt him his wage,' id. 5714.

68. 'Et quant les Englecqs eurent prins dedens la ville ce qui leur plent, ils boutèrent le feu partout,' Le Bourgeois de Valenciennes, p. 219.

73. Minot probably wrote *lere* not *say*. Comp. 'Whom the lord that all thing can.' leryd lely on his scole,' Hampole's Psalter, 1/22; 'pere cursis lely for to lere,' York Plays, 9/18, 150/141.

74. Comp. 'Fadir and sone sall be dongen downe,' Thomas of Erceldoune, 411; 'To dinge sante Stewyne with stanis done,' Horstmann, Barbour, i. 22/512; Sir Perceval, 642; Sir Ferumbras, 5557.

78. As the bridge over the Somme at Abbeville was not broken down, Cressy is almost certainly a scribe's error for Poissy. The mending of the bridge at the latter place was a remarkable incident in the campaign. Compare the account of the Bourgeois of Valenciennes, 'Et le roy d'Engleterre . . . fist ardoir Deu . . . jusques à Poissy où il trouva le pont romput et brisiet. Et la estoit le commun d'Amiens et ceulx des villes de là entour et des gens d'armes avoec eulx de par le roy de France qui gardoient le pas contre les Englecqs . . . et quant ils virent les Englecqs moult bien se deffendirent,' p. 222, 3. The activity of the French is also testified to in the letter of Richard de Wynkeleye, the King's Confessor (Avesbury, p. 363. Murimuth, 215). 'Et sic dominus rex venit Pusiaccum, ubi invenit pontem fractum, et adversarius suus citra Pusiaccum non quievit.' From l. 81 one is led to suggest that Minot has confused together Poissy and Blanquetaque.

83. With **big**, strong, comp. 'With mony bold men in batell and biggest in Armes,' Troy Book, 1032.

86. **of**. Comp. 'fforto felle of þe ffrigies felly he þoght,' Troy Book, 5875.

89. The town is Paris. Edward advanced to the gate of Nully and burnt the tower called Montjoye. The continuator of Nangis was an eye-witness, ii. 198.

91. This is after the romances. Comp. 'And he hit redde, y untherstonde, | The teres downe gan he lete,' Emare, 548, 9. See for further examples Athelston, p. 376, note on l. 275. **I vnderstand**, I undertake to say, is used of confident belief, so, 'þe dynt smot þorw; þe heþene herte, | I vndyrstande it gan hym smerte,' Richard Coer de Lion, 5081, 2; 'Ther Jesu for vs, y understonde, | Hys blood gan blede,' Octavian, 17/515, 6.

98. **knokkes**, blows, as their reward. Comp. 'With peys, stones and gavelok, | Heore fon they gave knokk,' Alisaunder, 1620, 21.

100. *staf ne stede*. A not common alliteration, but in 'A staf is nou my stede,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Society), p. 48. A similar phrase is 'There helpud noþur helme noþere hatte,' *Ipomadon*, 5220. Perhaps infantry or cavalry is meant.

101. 'Car les chevaulz des François, qui se sentirent feruz des saiettes, se prindrent à desroier et en chay mors plusieurs,' *Chronique Normande*, p. 81.

103. Comp. 'That cawsyd hur to wante hur wylle,' *Le Bone Florence*, 2109.

104. See viii. 79, note.

107. *cant and kene*, bold and eager. See v. 64, and comp. 'Knoute com with his kythe, þat kant was & kene,' *Langtoft*, i. p. 50; 'Of Knightes full kene & cant men of wille,' *Troy Book*, 2267; 'Iuus þat war sa cant and kene,' *Cursor*, 8943 C; *Barbour*, Bruce, viii. 280; *York Plays*, 183/183. These are all the examples of the combination I have met with.

108. *play and pride*. Comp. 'And Beues shold passe with pley and pride,' *Beuis of Hamtoun*, 41/683; 'For werdes welthe and prid and play | Endes al wit ten and tray,' *Small, Metrical Homilies*, p. 43; 'Hir lust, her pride & al her play,' *Hymns to the Virgin*, 25/118. *Play* is used here ironically, just as *game* sometimes is.

109. See l. 45. This stanza is directed against William, Count of Namur, Henry, Count of Salm, John of Hainault, 'et grant fuissou de bonne bachelerie de Haynnau et d'ailleurs' (*Froissart*, iv. 398), who had formerly supported Edward, but were now on Philip's side. Minot says that if they were convinced of the justice of Edward's cause, they should at least refrain from fighting against him.

110. *prowd in palle*, an epithet of the romance writers. Comp. 'pre knightes proud in palle | He mette þat selve day,' *Libeaus*, 413, 4; 'Princys, pruddust in palle,' *Anturs of Arther*, xxvi; *Religious Pieces*, p. 93. *Proude in pan* with the same meaning occurs in *Sir Tristrem*, 994. The array of princes and nobles on the French side at Crécy was unusually brilliant. 'Mais tant y avoit de gentils hommes sans les aultres que c'estoit une merveille de leurs riches adornemens veyr et regarder s'il y eult fait beau tamps et cler, mais il plouvinoit,' *Le Bourgeois de Valenciennes*, p. 231.

115. to *lat*, dependant on *sall*, like *Maintene*: *to* is often inserted when the second infinitive is separated from its principal verb.

116. *on faire manere*, honourably, but generally courteously, as in 'And Rycharde aunswerede in fayre manere,' *Richard Coer de Lion* (Weber), 704.

118. See vi. 20, note.

120. **cumberd all in care.** Comp. 'Thay saide a childe there shuld be borne | To by mankynde, combryd in care,' Towneley Plays, 331/173; 'She be not combrede ine-to more care,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 252/862.

123. See ii. 20, note.

126. **drewris dere.** The same combination is in, 'Sho was al dight with drewries dere,' Ywain, 1406.

130. **or pou pas,** before they have done with you; comp. 'Sche schal the 3eue, or thow pas | Wit', Laud Troy Book, 2470.

131. Comp. 'A monke ye may be when ye will, | For ye be shavynne wile þer till | And right wele be ye crownde: | Goo take youre abbyte on be tyme | And helpe to syng bothe oure & pryme, | For ye be shavyne rownde,' Ipomadon, 230/8087-92; 'þou hast a crown schauen to þe bon | Tomorwe þou miȝt sing anon | Wele þou þouȝtest to ben a prest | When þou of swiche a bischop order berst,' Guy. Auch. 3651-4; 'He made him a croun brod þere | As a monke þat orderd were,' id. 5287, 8; Beues of Hamtoun, A. 1869-74; Arthour & M. 299/8188 with note.

133. **Franceis, Frenchman.** Laurencius Franceys occurs in a Subsidy Roll for Sussex in 1295. (Sussex Collections, xxiv. p. 67.)

135. **gapin.** So, 'Et sera de par moi celle ville gastée | Et ochise la gent gisant geule bée,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 14.

136. Comp. for the combination, 'E cointement fu detruissé | Par un treget sanz gile,' Wright, Pol. Songs, p. 62.

137, 8. may mean that the bishops performed well in the battle. The Bishop of Durham was one of the three leaders of the second division; he is said by the Bourgeois of Valenciennes to have rescued the Prince of Wales (p. 233). Comp. 'Hys lyff fforsoþe nouȝt longe lest, | Ffor Kyng Richard was his preeste,' Richard Coer de Lion, 5315, 6. 'That the Iren with the hawberk met | Right ageyn the self brest | Wel nigh it had ben his prest,' Generides, 3856-8; Appendix, iv. 773-84; and note on ix. 30. But it might mean that some of them were killed there; Beuis of Hamtoun, 71/1232, has, 'ffor sone thy songe shall be welawey.' Froissart says the Archbishop of Rouen lost his life there, and Michael of Northburgh adds the bishop of Nîmes and the Archbishop of Sens, but they are wrong (Luce, Froissart, iii. p. 1x).

139. **file,** worthless person: perhaps variant of vile; which is so used, comp. 'Ne holde here affir for no vile,' Laud Troy Book, 818; but connected by Björkman with O.W.Scand. *fýla*, objectionable person (Scandinavian Loan-Words, p. 210).

140. **his dole,** his share of the blows.

142. **Geneuayse,** from O.F. Gèneveis, It. Genovesi; Genova being the Italian literary name for Genoa. Skelton has the same adj. 'That jentyll Jorge the Januay,' i. 127/35; it is ironical, for the Genoese mercenaries were a terror alike to friends and enemies. Six thousand

of them took part in the battle; they were specially brought from some vessels at Harfleur under Ottone Doria. The night before the battle they were kept at Mautort and Rouvroi; they were not permitted to enter Abbeville lest they might sack it (Louandre, p. 128). They commenced the battle, but were repulsed by the English archers, and Philip ordering the men at arms under the Duke of Alençon to advance and cut them down ('Or tos, or tos! tués toute ceste ribaudaille, il nous ensonnient et tiennent le voie sans raison,' Froissart, v. p. 49), few of them escaped from the field. Those who got away were killed by the peasantry of Picardy as they wandered about (Luce, Bertrand du Guesclin, p. 157).

145. Le Bel in a remarkable passage, ii. p. 61-63, states his reasons for preferring the 'noble king,' Edward, to Philip. He charges the latter with cowardice, love of ease, leaning to the 'poor counsel of clerks and prelates,' and of crimes 'which ought to make him be less honoured by all.'

151. Comp. 'Fadir, he sayd, alle es wonne,' Octavian, 115/778.

157. 'Et Phelip de Valoise et le markys qest appelle le elitz du Romeyns eschaperent naufrez à ceo qe homme dist,' Avesbury, p. 369.

159. Perhaps we should read *with his trip*, i.e. troop. Comp. 'Whan he & alle his trip for nouht fled so tite,' Langtoft, i. p. 203, which translates, 'Kant of (od) tut sun hoste à Gesorz fuyst,' Wright, Langtoft, ii. p. 118. But the text gives a good sense as it stands. Comp. 'And deep me waitiþ with a trippe of dissaite,' Hymns to the Virgin, 77/599, 75/536.

168. See viii. 24, note.

170. **king with croune.** A favourite phrase of the romance writers. Comp. 'Who was king wiþ croun,' Sir Tristrem, 5; 'Crist, crowned kyng · that on cros didest.' Piers Plowman, C. 524/1; and the collection in Zielke, Sir Orfeo, p. 10.

VIII.

The Siege and Taking of Calais.

Edward left the scene of the battle on the 28th of August; he appeared before Calais on the 2nd of September. The town was invested on the following day, and vigorous assaults were at first directed against it, but they were repulsed and Edward decided on starving out the garrison. The French cruisers, however, succeeded in relieving it, till the English fleet mustered in sufficient force to command the channel. Towards the end of June, 1347, John de Vienne, the captain of the town, sent out a letter to tell Philip that the besieged

were reduced to the utmost straits. It was intercepted, but Edward forwarded it to Philip, who collected an army at Amiens and came to Sangatte on the 27th of July. Finding the English in a very strong position, he sent a challenge to Edward to meet him in the open field. Edward's answer is variously reported; according to his own account he accepted the offer for the 3rd of August, but Froissart says he declined to move. Philip, at any rate, retreated hurriedly on the 2nd of August, and the town yielded the next day. (The authorities are the same as those given for vii. In Luce, Froissart, iv. p. xxv, there is a note on the story of the devotion of Eustace de St. Pierre and his five companions.)

3. **mirth on mold, joy on earth.** Comp. 'So þat no murþe upon mold · no miȝt hem bet haue lyked,' W. of Palerne, 1012, 1316, 2478.

4. See ix. 38.

5. **wight in wede.** See v. 38. The men of Calais had made themselves particularly hated by the English for their piracies in the Channel.

8. **þowre care es cumen.** Comp. 'Oure cares ar comen bothe kyne and colde,' York Plays, 30/46.

18. For the alliteration comp. 'Nis non so fresch · on fote to fare. Ne non so feir · on folde to fynde,' E. E. Poems, 134/49, 50.

20. **on bankes bare.** See vii. 21, note.

21. **als hund dose hare.** So, 'þe soudan drof hem yn the feld, | As hond doþ þe hare,' Octavian, 48/1529, 30; 'About þei gan him chace & hunted him als hayre,' Langtoft, p. 210; 'Thei fledde him as hare doth hound,' Laud Troy Book, 7009; Richard, 5110.

24-6. A small town grew up round Calais during the siege. 'Ains fist [Edowart] tantost faire son hostel de mesrien (= mairien, timber), et plances, et couvrir d'estrain (straw) pour là demourer tout hyver. . . . Chascun des seigneurs et chevaliers fit faire au mielx qu'il poeut sa loge, l'ung de boys, l'autre de genests, les aultres d'estrain, tant qu'en petit temps ilz firent là une forte ville et grande, et y trouvoit-on à vendre quanques on vouloit à grand marchié; et y avoit boucherie, hale de draps, et toutes marchandises aussy bien que Arras ou Anvers, car ilz avoient les Flamens de leur acord, dont tous biens leur venoient,' Le Bel, ii. p. 95.

29. **walkes ful wide.** Comp. x. 9; 'Your worde & your worchip walkeȝ ay quere,' Gawayne, 1521; 'He leit no word than walk off his passage,' Wallace, ix. 29; 'The worde of him walkit baith fer and ner,' id. iii. 252; 'þe word of him welk al þe land,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 35/43; Ipomydon, 131; Squyr of Lowe Degre, 520; 'þa asprang his word wide geond land,' Ælf., Lives of Saints, 192/388; 'The worde of his werkes thurghe þe worlde sprange,' Troy Book, 295; 'þe word of ihesu was risen brade,' Cursor, 14000: 'His name is spronge wide,'

Libeaus, 288; 'þe dedes of þer hondes þorgh reames er ronnen,' Langtoft, i. p. 144; and Sir Gowther, 192 note.

33. Comp. 'þys frensche men buþ boþ lyther & fel,' Sir Ferumbras, 1535; and for the alliteration, 'For he was fers, prud, and fell,' Cursor, 2197; and ix. 7.

34. *dray*, an instance of the rare contracted form, as in York Plays, 237/121, of *deray*, for which latter comp. Alisaunder, 1961, and Sir Tristrem, 3165.

41. The Cardinals appointed by Pope Clement the Sixth to try to bring about a peace were Annibale Ceccano, bishop of Frascati (Tusculum), and Étienne Aubert, bishop of Ostia, who was elected Pope (Innocent the Sixth) in 1352. The pope had already in February remonstrated with Edward for not listening to them (Avesbury, p. 378), but they again attempted to make terms when Philip's army arrived at Sangatte. Minot's distrust (ll. 37-40) expresses a popular feeling. In 1338, John Stratford openly impugned the fairness of the Cardinals who came to settle the differences between Edward and Philip (Walsingham, Ypodigma Neustriæ, p. 276). So P. Plowman's vicar, 'þe comune clamat cotidie · eche a man to other, | "þe contre is þe curseder · þat cardynales come Inne,"' B. 363/414, 5. And in 21st Henry VIII, the Duke of Suffolk quoted as an old saw, 'that there was neuer Legate nor Cardynall, that dyd good in Englande,' Hall's Chronicle, ed. 1550, folio 183 a.

43. in *þat stede*, in that place. So, ' & tuk conseil þat (*read at*) þe stede | Hou best þai mycht þis il remede,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 62/73, 4.

54. *loud or still*, under all circumstances. This phrase occurs frequently in the romances; comp. 'Fader, i chulle him serue at wille, | Erli and late, loude and stille,' King of Tars, V. 223, 4; 'To god hy cryde loude and styll,' Octavian, 18/537; 'That thai and thairis, loud and still, | Suld be in all thing at his will,' Bruce, iii. 745, 6; Lay le Freine, 286; Sir Gowther, 175; Rowland and Otuell, 124; Castel off Loue, 994; York Plays, 163/150; Hampole, 3175, and many other places. Variants are, *at nessche & hard*, Sir Ferumbras, 3499; *moyste and drye*, York Plays, 217/521; *even and morne*, id. 113/33; *biforen and bihinde*, Horstmann, A. L., i. 153/209.

57. Comp. iii. 117, and see in Amis, p. xliii, a collection of similar phrases used in the romances to introduce a new division of the subject.

58. See note on i. 81.

59. The Bourgeois of Valenciennes describes the ceremony of surrender. 'Et le samedi au matin on mist les banières du roy d'Engleterre dedens le chastel et la ville de Callais aux tours et aux cresteaux, et le dimence après le jour Saint-Pierre entrant aoust, v jours au mois

d'aoust, l'an mil III^e et XLVII, entra monseigneur Gaultier de Mausny dedens la ville de Callais entre luy et monseigneur de Beauchamp, et amenèrent monseigneur Jehan de Viane, chastelain du chastel et le capitaine de la ville, luy VI^e de gentils hommes, par devant le roy d'Engleterre et son conseil tout parmy l'ost, en pur les chiefs et en pur les corps, leurs espées toutes nues tenans par les pointes, et les clefs de la ville et du chastel portant devant eulx en une lanche. Et quant ils vindrent devant le roy Édouart d'Engleterre et tous ceulx qui veoir les peurent, ils se mirent à genous en priant et requérant humblement merchy, en rendant la ville et le chastel, leurs corps et leurs avoirs, pour faire à la singulière volenté du roy d'Engleterre, et puis les fist le roy lever et passer oultre. Et tantost après revinrent VIII aultres hommes de Callais, IIII bourgeois et IIII mariniers en pur les corps et les chiefs nuds et tous deschaux, chascun ung cestre en leurs cols, pource faire la volenté du roy. Et quant ils vinrent près du roy, ils prirent les chevestres en leurs mains et agenoullèrent devant le roy en priant merchy et mettant les chevestres ens leurs cols, pource faire la volenté du roy, de corps et d'avoir. Adont les fist le roy lever et les rechut en la manière que vous orez. Les chevaliers et les gentils hommes il envoya en Engleterre, où ils furent grande espasse en prison, et puis furent-ils recrus à renchon. Et les VIII furent rechargiet à monseigneur Gaultier de Mausny et à monseigneur Jehan de Beauchamp, et le chasteau et toute la ville à la volenté du roy d'Engleterre, et les ramenèrent en la ville. Et eult le roy en pourpos qu'il meteroit tous ceulx de Callais à mort; mais la royne d'Engleterre, comme bonne dame piteuse et sage, en eult moult grant pitié,' pp. 259, 60. The English chronicle in MS. Harley 4690 omits mention of the queen's intercession, 'And anone þeighe wenten & towke a downe þe baners & the armes off ffrance ou every side þat weren hongedde oute. And went vppon þe walles off þe towne in diuerse places as nakedde as þey werre borne saving her schertes and herre Breches & helden her swerdes nakedde and þe point in her handes downwarde and putten Ropes and halteres aboute her nekkes & yeldedde vpe þe keyes off þe towne & off þe castelle vn to þe king Edward wiþ grete ffere and drede off herte. ¶ And wanne þe king saugh þis as a mercyfulle lorde & king receyvedde hem alle in to his grace,' f. 82 a². The halter on the neck was, no doubt, the regular sign of unconditional surrender; so the people of Galloway (Wyntoun, vii. 2872) come, 'wyth rapys and wethyis about thare hals.' Comp. also, 'Out com the wardayn Orgayl, | And an hundryd knyȝtes in his parayl, | Barffoot, vngyrt, wiþouten hood: | "Mercy, Thomas, spylle nouȝt oure blood! | Tak þe alle þe goodes þat we haue, | Wiþ þat þou wylt oure lyues saue, | Lat vs passe away al nakyd,"' Richard, 4179-85.

63. law of land. Comp. 'As it was þe landys lawe,' Athelston, 646, and Zupitza's note.

73-75. 'Car ils avoient eu sy grandes disettes d'excessives et urgentes famines qu'il n'avoit demouré en la ville cheval à mengier, ne chien, ne chat, sorris, ne rats,' Bourgeois de Valenciennes, p. 260.

79. on, by. Comp. vii. 104, and 'It was wel sen apon þair sang | Mikel ioi was þam o-mang,' Cursor, 20677, 8 and 24333; 'Pat was on Tristrem sene,' Sir Tristrem, 1205; 'On þe hit is wel eþ sene,' O.E. Hom., ii. 255/5.

82. Jean de Vienne, 'gentils chevaliers vaillans as armes' (Froissart, v. p. 85), was the son of Jean de Vienne, seigneur de Pagny. He received a pension of 100 livres in 1338, and this was increased to 300 in 1340 and to 600 in 1348. He was captain of Mortagne in 1339-40, and he served in Brittany with the Duke of Normandy in 1341. He died at Paris in 1351.

94. barely, utterly, or openly, N.E.D., is probably what the poet wrote. Comp. 'But why are ȝe barely þus braþe?' York Plays, 221/37. But we might have expected, *paire leders bargan may þai ban*. Comp. vii. 64; the collection of examples in Mätzner, Altenglische Sprach., i. p. 362; and 'Ful sare þou sall þe bargan ban,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 160/88; 'This bargayne schall þai banne,' York Plays, 155/279; 'That bargynne myght he banne,' Ipomadon, 1300, 3883, 5429.

IX.

The Battle of Neville's Cross.

The Scotch took advantage of Edward's absence to invade England. They probably acted at the instigation of Philip, who hoped that the English would thus be obliged to abandon the siege of Calais. The Scotch mustered at Perth. On their way south, they demolished the Pile of Liddel and killed Walter de Selby, the guardian. They then marched through Cumberland, burned Lanercost Abbey, and, keeping along the Tyne, sacked the abbey of Hexham, whence they proceeded by Ebchester in the direction of Durham. But when they reached Bearpark (Beaurepaire, de Bello Reditu), a foraging expedition under Sir William Douglas came up quite unexpectedly with the main force of the English and suffered a loss of five hundred men. The English then advanced to meet the enemy, and the battle fought near Durham on the 17th of October resulted in the total defeat of the Scots and the capture of their king.

The story of Queen Philippa's presence at the battle is due to Froissart, following and adding to Le Bel, who says she came to

Newcastle-on-Tyne and mustered the English troops there. But a charter at Mons shows that she was at Ypres on the day of the battle (Luce, Froissart, iv. p. xi note). Minot does not mention her at all, but he is equally silent as to Ralph de Neville and Henry de Percy, 'illustres miles, Titus, Hector, Brutus, Achilles,' as he is called in another poem on the battle (Wright, *Pol. Poems*, i. p. 45).

Besides the Latin verses printed by Wright in his *Political Poems*, there are two other poems on the battle which are reprinted from the MSS. in the Appendix, pp. 112-22. See also Durham feilde in the Percy Folio MS. vol. ii. p. 190 foll. (*Chronicon de Lanercost*. The Book of Pluscarden. *Chronicon Monast. de Melsa*. The contemporary account written by Thomas Samson, a clerk in the diocese of York, printed in Lettenhove's Froissart, v. p. 489. The letter of John Fossour, prior of Durham, to the Bishop of Durham, in Raine's *Letters from the Northern Registers*, p. 387. The best account of the battle will be found in *Archaeologia Aeliana*, N. S., vol. i. p. 271.)

1. *at distance* usually means, at enmity, hostile. But it gives a better sense here if taken literally, David fled before Edward Balliol when he appeared in Scotland in 1332. So the writer of the *Meaux Chronicle* begins his account of Neville's Cross in the same way with a reference to David's withdrawal to France; 'interea David de Bruyz, dictus rex Scottorum, qui a facie Edwardi de Balliolo quondam regis Sootiae fugerat in Franciam' (*Chron. de Melsa*, iii. p. 60). It is true that David was only eight years old in 1332, and that he did not leave Scotland till 1334 (see note on ii. 22), though Wyntoun and Froissart put it down under 1332, and Hailes under 1333. Lines 3, 4 may be taken either of the battle fought on Dupplin Moor in 1332, at which David was not present, or of Neville's Cross fought on Bearpark Moor or rather the Red Hills close to it. 'Dicti vero Anglorum principes, pro bello omnibus conatibus se praeparantes, in quadam mora prope Dunelmensem, quae Mora de Beuerepair vocitatur, locum pugnandi elegerunt,' *Book of Pluscarden*, i. p. 293, 4.

3. *north end*, northern parts. So in the Seebuch, p. 104, *nortende* with same meaning. Comp. also, 'heofon biþ open on sumum ende on þæm eastdæle,' *Blick. Hom.*, 93/1; '& al þene norð aende' *iuæld to þan grunde*, *Lazamon*, 14001, 2; 'Alle þe North ende was in his kepyng,' *Langtoft*, i, p. 32; *Sainte Marherete*, p. 101.

6. *þe flowres þat faire war* is an allusion to the lilies in the arms of France. See xi. 3, and compare, 'The King Richard off Yngland | Wes in his flowris than regnand: | . . . Bot his flowris efftyre sone | Fadyt, and ware all undone,' *Wyntoun*, ix. 1787, 8; 1793, 4.

8. *has done þam to dwell.* *Dwell* here means to remain dead on the field, as in 'So sore strokes he them gave, | For evyr he dud them to dwelle,' Sir Eglamour, 47, 8; where *for evyr* gives the special force to the verb.

13. Comp. 'In saint Andrew he had swilk trist; | and of þat merk no-thing he myst,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 8/289, 90. The plural *merkes* is noteworthy. For *of*, comp. i. 38; 'failede . . . of his hure,' Ancren Riwe, 404/13.

15-18. 'Per idem tempus David le Bruse rex Scotiae, animatus per instigationem regis Franciae, cum Scotorum exercitu glomerato ausus est intrare Angliam, aestimans non remansisse in terra nisi clericos et pastores: autumabat enim omnem regni militiam cum ceteris viris defensoribus exisse regnum cum rege suo,' Chronicon Angliae, p. 23; 'Dicebat autem David quod hoc non posset esse; "non sunt," inquit, "in Anglia nisi miseri monachi, improbi presbyteri, porcorum pastores, sutores et pelliparii,"' Chronicon de Lanercost, p. 348; 'Nam suggestum erat eis quod non remanserant in Anglia quin omnes forent ad obsidionem Calesiae nisi solum agricolae ac pastores et capellani imbecilles et decrepiti,' Knighton, ii. p. 42. 'Thai sayd, that thai mycht rycht welle fare | Till Lwndyn, for in Ingland than | Off gret mycht wes left na man, | For, thai sayd, all war in Frawns, | Bot sowteris, skynneris, or marchawns,' Wyntoun, viii. 6158-62. See also 113. 37-42, 117. 102-112. So in Scottish ffeilde, 96-110 (Percy Folio MS. i. p. 217) the French King incites the Scots to invade England, because 'there is noe leeds in that land: saue Millers and Masse priests, | all were faren into france: that fayre were in armes.'

23. *berebag.* See ii. 20, note. Le Bel says that there were forty-three thousand light horse on the Scotch side, 'car toutes les basses gens d'Escoce ont haquenées petites quant ilz vont en ost,' ii. p. 109.

25. *in þe waniand.* See v. 30, x. 6. *Waniand* is explained by Skeat (Etymol. Dict., p. 695) as the Northern present participle of M.E. *wanien* (but *wanande be* deficient, E. E. Psalter, i. p. 227, and again *wanand* *deficiendo*, and York Plays, 51/204), to wane, decrease, and as meaning in this phrase, the waning moon. 'This was considered an unlucky time for beginning any enterprise, but the Scots disregarding it met and decided to invade England about the day of the full moon, Tuesday, Oct. 3rd (Arch. Aeliana, N. S., i. p. 274). The phrase comes, however, to mean quite generally, with ill luck, as in 'Weynd furth in the Wenyande,' Towneley Plays, 310/142, 15/226, 227/748, 290/339; 'We! Whythir now in wilde waneand,' York Plays, 36/45; 'Nowe walkis on in þe wanyand,' id. 319/388; 'Furth in þe wylde wanyand be walkand,' id. 336/485. Comp. too the variation 'Now in þe wilde vengeance ye walke with þat wight,' id. 291/545. The use

of *wilde* in conjunction with *waniand* seems to be due to the influence of the phrase *will* or *wild of wane*, *will wanand*, mistaken in opinion.

28. Of necessity it behoved them to kneel.

29. William de'la Zouche [now Souche] ('est pater invictus sicco de stipite dictus, for Zouche signifieth the stocke of a tree in the French tongue,' MS. Cott. Julius, F. 11. f. 134 b) was Lord High Treasurer in 1338. He became Archbishop of York in 1340 and died in 1352. He was one of the three commissioners of array appointed to assemble the Northern forces against the Scots, and he commanded the third line in the battle.

30. This is probably ironical like vii. 138. The Archbishop absolved the Scots with blows. See especially 120. 181-4.

31. **Dorem** and **Carlele** probably mean the men of those towns. The Bishop of Durham, who had fought well at Crécy, was in France, and a description of the battle was sent him by the Prior of Durham. Le Bel is then in error in stating that he took part in the battle, and indeed his list is curiously wrong. John de Kirkeby, the Bishop of Carlisle, had distinguished himself the previous year in repelling a Scotch foray (Chronicon Angliae, p. 21), but although some of the chroniclers say he was present, the fact that his name does not occur in the list of twelve commanders who were specially thanked by the Regent on Oct. 20th (Rot. Scot., i. 675) is conclusive.

32. Comp. 'Wynnes wurschip, and wele, throghe wytenes of hondus,' Anturs of Arther, xxi; 'Miche wirchippe he wane,' Sir Perceval, 11.

37. John of Coupland, 'apert homme d'armes et hardi durement' (Froissart, v. p. 128), was in Flanders in 1338. In the following year he had a pension of £20 for his services on the border, and early in 1347 he received £600 a year for life. In the same year he was made constable of Roxburgh Castle, and he was sheriff of Northumberland from 1350 to 1354. He was about to go on some distant expedition in 1359, when he made his will (Surtees Society, ii. p. 29). Five years later he was assassinated on Bolton Moor by John Clifford of Ewyas (Dugdale, Baronage, i. p. 341), whose lands were given to Coupland's widow (Patent Rolls, pp. 177 b and 181 a). Clifford was afterwards pardoned. There is an account of Coupland in Archaeol. Aeliana, N. S., i. p. 293. He did not capture David without a severe struggle, in which the Scotch King knocked out two of his teeth with a dagger: the account of the Chronicle of Meaux, 'fugiens captus est' (iii. p. 62), and of the poem in Wright, i. p. 46, 'Brus David auffugit, fugiens contra leo rugit, | Coplond attingit fugientem, vulnere cingit; | Regem persequitur, David in spinis reperitur,' is less probable. Le Bel (ii. p. 112) tells us that he was unwilling to give up his prisoner till Edward

sent for him to Calais and made him a knight. Then David was transferred from Castle Ogle to London. For *wight man in wede*, see v. 38, note.

38. *Kend him his crede*, taught him an elementary lesson, so also viii. 4, xi. 14. Comp. 'Abate his pryde this ylk nyght, | And rekyn hym a crede,' Towneley Plays, 259/54, where one would expect to find *bost* for *pryde*, and *kenne* for *rekyn*; 'Bien vous aprent vo pate-nostre,' Wistasse le Moine, 1627.

43. *a schowre*, in abundance. The usual metaphorical meaning of shower in M.E. is attack, tumult, pang, as illustrated in Zupitza, Guy of Warwick, 9206 note. But compare here, 'Shame þe mote by shoure,' King Horn, L. 334 note.

44. Comp. 'He dranc þe sure and i þe suete,' Cursor, 23979.

48. *Iohn*. See vii. 23, note.

50. *he wakkind þe were*. Comp. vi. 10, and 'Now wackons vp werre as ye shall note after,' Troy Book, 2046; 'As werre schold awake,' Libeaus, 1149. *pat held him self waken*, that kept him self in trouble. Comp. 'Ma[r]kade held þam waken, & tok of þam tuenti,' Brunne's Langtoft, i. p. 205; '& now is Acres taken þorgh R. þe conqueror, | His banere held þam waken was put [out] of o toure,' id. i. p. 179; 'Wyþ sege þe Payens held þem waken,' Robert of Brunne, 9916. In ll. 8576, 9914, the phrase means to be on the alert; it is a favourite with Robert of Brunne. I have not met it elsewhere.

51. *had he his brede baken*, had he ruined himself, or, in similar slang phrase, been done brown. The meaning is shown by 'Hadd y þat stronge strok y-take.' þou haddest to me ymynt, | For euere my bred had be bake.' myn lyf dawes had be tynt,' Sir Ferumbras, 576, 7; 'Deep seiþ, my breed he haþ baken me, | Now schakeþ he his spere to smite me,' Hymns to the Virgin, 70/399, 400; 'whan þou doest thus, there bale þou bakeste,' Pol., Religious and Love Poems, 194/485. *His*, that is, his own, seems necessary to the sense.

54. *fayled pare*, failed to appear in London, the appointed place of meeting.

56. For the alliterative formula of this line, comp. 'When all þir saws war said,' Harrowing, 753; '& sayde þan on his sawe,' Sir Ferumbras, 3740; 'Then sayde þe emperour yn hys sawes,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 511/24; 'Avyse you of thise sawes sere,' Towneley Plays, 311/158.

60. *kast me in care*. See vi. 18, note.

63. While at Ryton on the Tyne, David was warned in a vision not to injure the territory of St. Cuthbert, or his expedition would end badly (Fordun, ed. Goodall, ii. 341). In the Rites of Durham (Surtees Society, xv), pp. 20-23, it is related that on the night before the battle John Fossour, the prior of the abbey, was commanded in a vision

to put the holy Corporax cloth, which St. Cuthbert had used when he said mass, on a spear-point like a banner, and to go to the Readhills on the following day and remain there till the end of the battle. He and his monks did so, and were miraculously protected against the attacks of the Scots. Shortly after the victory the cloth was placed in the centre of a banner (it had certainly formed part of a banner centuries before this, Reginaldi Libellus, Surtees Society, i. p. 83), 'which was never caryed or shewed at any battell but by the especial grace of God Almightye and the mediacione of holie Saint Cuthbert, it browghte home the victorie.' It was at the battle of Flodden. See for further details, *Archaeologia Aeliana*, N. S., ii. p. 51.

64. *law gan pai lout*. Comp. vi. 40, and, 'Who so will wiþ him fiȝt, | Be hit be day oþer niȝt, | He doþ him lowe loute,' Libeaus, 766-8.

65. *leued allane*, remained alone on the battle-field. *Leuid* is the same as *bileuid*, vii. 101. Comp. ' & skalyt his mene here & þare | Til he belewit al hyme-ane,' Horstmann, *Barbour*, ii. 15/207, 9; ' & scho alane lewit, glad & blyth,' id. ii. 9/499; ' þat ilke a mane presit to fle, | & lewit þe body it a-lane,' id. i. 118/182, 3 where *body* may be nominative or accusative.

X.

Les Espagnols sur Mer.

Edward had done his best to conciliate the Spaniards. In 1346 he had caused special proclamation to be made that they were to be treated on land and sea like his own people (*Delpit*, *Collection Générale*, i. p. 70, 1). But the relationship which existed between the royal houses of France and Spain drew the latter into the conflict with England. The commander of the Spaniards in this sea-fight was Don Carlos de la Cerda, son of Don Luis de la Cerda, the nephew of Philip.

In November, 1349, a Spanish fleet had taken some English ships laden with wine either in the estuary of the Gironde or on the way to England, and killed the crews. Edward, hearing that a number of Spanish vessels were at Sluys, probably the same which had committed the outrage (*Le Baker*, p. 109), determined to punish them. They have reached such a pitch of pride, he says in a letter to the Archbishop of Canterbury (*Rymer*, iii. p. 202), that they threaten not only to destroy the English power on the sea, but also to conquer England. He accordingly gathered at Sandwich a fleet mainly from the Cinque Ports, and putting in it the flower of his nobility and the pick of his archers and men-at-arms, he stood out to sea. Meanwhile the Spaniards,

hearing that Edward was waiting for them, hired men and prepared their vessels for the fight (l. 14). It took place on Sunday, the 29th of August, 1350, in sight of Winchelsea. After a desperate conflict the English won the day, and took a number of the Spanish ships, variously reported at 26 (Walsingham, *Hist. Anglic.*, p. 25), 24 (Avesbury, p. 412), 14 (Froissart) and 17 (Le Baker). These they found to be laden with merchandise, and especially Flemish cloth. (Froissart. *Chronicon Galfridi le Baker de Swynebroke*. An Account in *Sussex Collections*, vol. iv. p. 118, is valuable for its detailed information, chiefly about the vessels.)

1. Compare with this formula of introduction, 'Spell yeit i wald spek if i cuth, | War ani mirthes in mi muth,' Cursor, 23945, 6; 'Mikel wald i mene and mote, | Wist i þat it me war bute | Ai to spell and noght to spede,' id. 23847-9; 'then to speke myght I not spare,' Towneley Plays, 212/265; 'For specheles may no man spede,' Gower, *Conf. Amantis*, i. 1293.

2. *worthly in wede*. See v. 38, note.

3. *driven to dale*, hurled to the grave. Comp. 'Deth him hadde driuen to grounde,' Horstmann, *Celestin*, 252 (*Anglia*, i. p. 73); 'Until þat ded haves dreven þam down,' Ywain, 4026; '& passede þe brugge anon, & slowe to grounde,' Robert of Gloucester, ed. Wright, 7316. *ded all paire dede*. Comp. 'Nou icham to dethe y-dyht, | y-don is al my dede,' *Specimens of Lyric Poetry* (Percy Soc.), p. 51; 'All his ded wer done, did he no mor,' Roland fragment, 676.

4. *seegronde*, bottom of the sea: comp. 'Ne me forswelge sægrundes deop,' Psalter, ed. Thorpe, lxviii. 15; 'ðis fis wuneð wið ðe se grund,' Bestiary, 517; *Lazamon*, 4033; Horstmann, *A. L.*, i. 167/329; *Child's Ballads*, ii. 448/11. The *Seebuch* has *Seegrund*, p. 92; as also *myddelgrunt*, a sandbank between two channels. Hampole's Psalter translates *mirabilia eius in profundo* by 'his woundirs in the ground.'

5. *for all paire grete fare*. See vi. 20, note.

6. *waniand*. See ix. 25, note.

8. *with trompes and taburns*. See iv. 80, v. 29, and comp. 'With trompes and with mekille pryde,' Octavian, 145/1287; 'Tabours and trimpes ȝede hem bi | and al maner menstraci,' Sir Orfeo, 299, 300, 519.

9. *weremen* is not in Stratmann. It occurs again in Wallace, iv. 256, 331, viii. 939, 1168, but nowhere else so far as I know. *walked full wide*. See viii. 29, note.

10. *in holl*, in the hold. Other examples with this special sense are, 'Bathe schip maistir, and the ster man also, | In the holl, but baid, he gert thaim go,' Wallace, ix. 121, 2; 'Than Wallace said, "Her is men

off mar waill | To sail thī schip, tharfor in holl thow ga," 'id. x. 824, 5. It has a wider meaning in, 'Thus to þe se þai maid þaime bowne | Into þe holl of wyntir richt,' translating in *profundo yemis*, Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 275/1694, 5.

14. *hurdis*. Mätzner wrongly treats this word as the plural of *hurde*, but gives no instance of the singular word, in spite of O.H.G. hurt; and his examples should be placed under *hurdice* or *hurduce*, L.L. *hurdicium*, and treated as singular. The *hurdis* is a rampart of woodwork erected on the bulwarks of a vessel to shelter the crew in actual combat. When the ordinary merchant ship was fitted out for warlike purposes, it was fortified in this way (see the account for boards, nails, &c. in the *Liber Contrarotulatoris*, pp. 60, 72); on the war galleys the 'hurdis' was sometimes moveable and could be fitted up just before the action. One French name for such a defence was *pavesade*, because it had replaced the range of shields (*paveis*). But it is just possible here from the poet's phrase, 'they hanged their hurdis on high,' that he is thinking of similar fortifications built round the castles on the masts. The Spaniards on this occasion equipped their vessels specially for the fight, as they apparently relied on the missiles they discharged from the tops: 'gros barriaus de fier forgiés et fais tout faitis pour lancier et pour effondrer nefes . . . et avoient, amont les mas, chastiaux *breteskiés* pourveus de pierres et de cailliaus pour jetter,' Froissart, v. p. 259; for *breteskiés* comp. 'On disait, dès le XI^e siècle, *bretescher* pour fortifier, garnir de creneaux de bois ou de hounds,' Viollet-Le-Duc, *Dictionnaire de l'Architecture française*, under *Bretèche*.

15. *west*. The English sailors, as it seems, were mostly from the Cinque Ports; for west in the romances, comp. 'King he was biweste,' King Horn, 5 note. *neghed pam nerr*, a common alliteration; comp. 'It puttes oway all oure powere | So þat we mai noght negh it nere,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 61/315, 6 and 139/121; 'Suffer me to negh the nere | And kys thi feete,' Towneley Plays, 324/589; York Plays, 23/38; Ywain, 596; Wyntoun, i. 1160; for further references and examples, see Athelston, p. 348, note on l. 30. *nerr* is comparative, nearer.

16. *gert pam snaper*. Comp. 'the foly of the ful garis hyme snapyr, quhen he venis to stand,' Ratis Raving, 23/773, 4; 'þe faster forward him he faris · þe faster he snapirs,' Wars of Alexander, 847; 'Stedes shall snapre throwght tresoun,' Thomas of Erceldoune, ed. Murray, 381.

17. *ffer might þai noght flit*. An uncommon combination, but comp. 'Nay, feynde, thou shalbe feste | that thou shalle flyt no far,' Towneley Plays, 304/353; 'And forþi, bot þou flit þe ferr,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 97/49; 'My ffadir thynkis to flitte full ferre,' York Plays, 47/58.

19. **Boy with pi blac berd.** This is plainly an allusion to Barbenaire, or, as he is more commonly called, Barbenoire, Blackbeard, the noted pirate of Genoa (see p. 60), who commanded the Genoese galleys at Sluys. Villani, in his account of that battle, describes him as 'Barbanero di Porto Venere grandi corsali,' vi. p. 205; Meyer, 'Barbanarius quidam,' f. 141 b; Mezeray, i. p. 774, 'Teste noire Geneuois.' He seems to be the same person as the Pierre dit Berbenaire (or Berbevaire) who in 1337 had 100 'livres tournois' given to him by Philip, and a further donation in 1342, with a view to induce him to live in France; but this seems doubtful. The Barbenaire who was at Sluys some would have identified with Egidio Boccanegra, the brother of the first doge of Genoa, the famous Simone Boccanegra. In 1340 Egidio entered the service of Alphonso XI, King of Castile; and in 1344 he greatly distinguished himself at the taking of Algeziras. In this year he offered to enter Edward's service. But the negotiations came to nothing, and he was made Admiral of Castile and Count of Palma ('Et qui navali vicit certamine Mauros | Aegidius regnis additus Hesperii,' Vberti Folietae Clarorum Ligurum Elogia, in Graevii Thesaurus, i. p. 800). In 1346 a convention was made between him and the King of France, in which he agrees to serve Philip with 200 ships against every one except the King of Castile and the Genoese. He defeated the English off La Rochelle in 1371. There is no ground for thinking he was present at the fight here commemorated by Minot. **I rede pat pou blin.** Comp. 'Of thy loking, I rede, þou blynne,' *Ipomydon*, 450.

21. **were on,** fight against. For the preposition comp. 'Bot werand on þe wrang þai wan,' *Cursor*, 20004.

23. **kindels pi care.** See ii. 10, note.

24. Comp. '& do þe Scottis deie & þer pride asuage,' *Langtoft*, i. p. 114; and for the latter half of the line, 'þai dump in the depe and to dethe passe,' *Troy Book*, 13289. **on a day,** at the appointed time.

25. This line, no doubt, refers to the depredations of the Spanish fleet in November of the previous year, when, starting from Guerrande in Brittany, they plundered English vessels coming from Bordeaux with wine and killed their crews. **Custom,** originally a 'duty' or 'payment on merchandise', here means ironically piratical exactions, and **with care,** with painstaking, is little more than a *cheville*.

27. **gude reson and right.** The phrase is always, *reason and right*, without any adjective. Comp. 'And on the morowe they went to chirch | Godes service for to werch, | As yt was reson and ryȝt,' *Sir Cleges*, E. 163-5; 'And þarfor it es reson and ryȝt | þat þai ay se þat gryȝely syȝht,' *Hampole*, 6891, 2; *Morte Arthure*, 2041; *Troy Book*, 8935, 10715; *Percy Folio MS.*, iii. 463/106, and 67/260.

XI.

The Taking of Guisnes.

The town of Guisnes was surprised by the English in January, 1352, and probably between the 6th and the 22nd. For we know that the captain of the town, Tassard de Bouvelinghem, was absent at the time of its capture, and he assisted at the first festival of the Order of the Star on the former date; while Avesbury tells us it was taken towards the festival of St. Vincent, which fell on January the 22nd. The hero of the enterprise, which was carried out during a truce, was an archer of Calais, John of Doncaster. According to Geoffrey le Baker, he had been a prisoner in Guisnes, and had escaped to Calais by means of a submerged wall built across the principal ditch of the town for the use of fishermen entering or leaving the town when the gates were shut at night. He soon found thirty associates in an attempt on the town. Coming to the place at the dead of night, they crossed the ditch and scaled the walls unperceived. The few soldiers on guard who resisted them were put to the sword, and the garrison was surprised in their hall or in bed, and permitted to depart unmolested. The captors afterwards sold the town to Edward. This account, which represents the affair as a private enterprise, and is evidently that accepted by Minot, receives support from a document printed by Delpit, *Collection générale des documents français qui se trouvent en Angleterre*, vol. i. p. 77, and in Palgrave's *Antient Kalendars*, i. p. 173. It is an indenture dated 14th of March, 1352, between Robert de Herle, Captain of Calais and others on the one part, and John de Dancastre and his associates at Guisnes on the other part for provisions purchased at 4000 gold nobles, that is for some part of the abundant store which the adventurers found in Guisnes. (Avesbury, p. 415.) But Froissart simply says the place was sold to the English and John de Beauchamp, Captain of Calais (v. p. 306). Le Bel gives as the price, 34,000 écus (ii. p. 170); and the *Chronique Normande* (p. 102) tells us that the traitor Hue de Beauconroy was afterwards torn asunder at Saint Omer. By other writers the loss of the town is connected with the murder of the Constable Raoul, Count of Eu and Guisnes. He had remained a prisoner in England since his capture at Caen in 1346 (p. 73). About this time he was allowed to return to France to raise his ransom, and was put to death on the 18th of November, 1350, by the king without trial. When his vassals heard of it, they handed the town over to the English. (The *Chronicon Galfridi le Baker* gives the most detailed account; it is followed by Stow. Avesbury. Froissart, ed. Luce iv. p. xlvi. *Chronique Normande*. Villani.)

Minot's poem should be compared with the description of the taking of Lochleven Inch by Wallace, Blind Harry, ix. 1162, and of the surprise of Perth by Bruce in Barbour, ix. 364. In the former is a striking parallel to ll. 22, 3 of our poem. Ramsay and his friends are wondering at Wallace's disappearance: 'As thai about was talkand on this wyss, | A message com, and chargyt thaim to ryss. | "My lord," he said, "to dyner has you cald | In till Lochlewyn, quhilk is a ryoll hald. | Ye sall fair weyll, tharfor put off all sorow." | Thai graithit thaim rycht ayrly on the morow; | . . . Thai lugyt thar till aucht dayis was at end; | Off meit and drynk thai had inewch to spend,' ix. 1213-18, 1221, 2.

In this, as in the last poem, the fifth line of each stanza is linked to the fourth by the repetition of some prominent word, or as in x. 23 by the use of a synonym like *care* for *bale*. The last stanza of xi. is possibly imperfect.

The content of the poem is very strangely stated in the heading.

2. *pat*. Minot hardly said that if the winter were away the summer would come; but if the winter were away and the summer were come, the lily and the leopard would meet. *pat* has probably been shifted by the scribe from line 3, and its place filled by *both*. Perhaps we should read *when*, and *pat* at the beginning of l. 3.

3. This probably means that the next campaign will be decisive, and the two countries will be united under one king, as the arms will be combined in one coat. So in 1329 the king's envoys, Adam Orleton and Roger Northborough, said in the opening of their speech to the French king, 'Ce fameux Prophete Merlin, à la veue duquel les plus memorables euenemens des choses humaines ont esté clairement presens, nous a distinctement marqué dans ses predictions, qu'au temps où nous sommes, les Lys & les Leopards seroient vnis dans vn mesme champ, & que les nobles Royaumes de France & d'Angleterre n'auroient plus qu'un mesme Monarque,' Mezeray, Hist. de France (ed. 1643), i. p. 752. In this view, the *grene* would mean the *champ*, the heraldic 'field.' Edward had already in 1337 quartered the arms of France, 'Edwardus, rex Angliae, qui se regem Franciae nominabat et arma Francorum cum suis jam permixerat, scilicet lilia et leopardos,' Nangis, ii. 196. John of Bridlington suggests, however, another meaning for *geder*, to meet in battle, in his lines, 'Conjunget flores leopardis deliciarum, | Per pugnatōres dum regnum quaeret avarum, | Coniuncti flores leopardis deliciarum, | Annos guerrarum tibi monstrat posteriores,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 147.

4. *haue minde of pi man*, remember King Edward. Comp. 'For to mynne on his mon his meth *pat* abydez,' Cleanness, 436; 'For loue

of Adam, þy man, | þat þow on him wilt haue mercy,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 135/879, 80; 'Haf now mercy of þy man, & hys mys-dedes,' Patience, 287; 'To the y crie ant calle, thou here me for thi man,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Soc.), p. 93.

5. I mak þe my mone. Comp. ii. 27, iii. 108, ix. 45. So 'To þe, lord, I make my mone,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 356/2, and 215/177; 'And whan ich make mone to God *memoria* ich hatte,' Piers Plowman, C. 292/186.

8. was wikked for to win is much the same as Langtoft's 'þat castelle was fulle strong & ille for to wynde,' i. p. 181. For *wikked*, difficult, comp. '& þey al hit be wykke to wynde,' Robert of Brunne, 9413; 'Morgan is wikk to slo,' Sir Tristrem, 775: 'wikked way' is the regular translation of 'mala uia'; comp. 'This were a wikked way' but who-so hadde a gyde,' Piers Plowman, B. 93/1.

13. Froissart mentions 'ung bon escuier que on appelloit Jehan Dancastre' as having been made Chatelain of Bourg in 1345 (iv. 304). But Geoffrey le Baker speaks of him as being an archer. He may be the person to whom the king makes a grant of lands belonging to the Earl of Warenne, 5 Edw. III (Abbrev. Rot. Orig., ii. pp. 52, 55), but nothing further is known of him.

14. ken þam paire crede. Comp. ix. 38.

15. stirt, said of sudden and rapid movement. Comp. 'Bot i have a wele rinand page, Wil stirt jider right in a stage,' Ywain, 1068.

18. for all paire grete fare. See vi. 20, note.

20. þat put þam fro pine, that saved them trouble, helped them in their attempt. Comp. 'ffranche men put þam to pine,' vii. 77.

21. fyne, apparently to come to terms, or perhaps, to cease from resistance. It has a quite different meaning, to die, in x. 17.

22. pare wald pai dine. See the Introduction. Stow, translating Le Baker, p. 117, tells us that when they had got possession of the town 'they tooke oute the Englishmen that had been taken the yeere before, and there kept in prison; and after they had relieved them well with meate and drinke, they made them gardeins over them that had them in custodie.'

26. Since the capture of Calais, Guisnes had become important to the French as a check on the English garrison of the former place. 'Istud fortalitium solebat Anglicis opturare viam in patriam superiorem, prebens patrie magnam securitatem a forariis Calesie,' Le Baker, p. 118, 9. It retained this importance afterwards when in the hands of the English; see the Chronicle of Calais (Camden Society), p. 203. *kindeld pi care*; see ii. 10, note.

31. Saint Omer lies about twenty-one miles to the south-east of Calais. It was a favourite resort of the Flemish exiles, and its garrison

had frequent encounters with that of Calais. In 1349, Geoffrey de Charny and Eustache de Ribemont had made an unsuccessful attack on Calais from it, and were taken prisoners. They were ransomed, and returned to Saint Omer in 1351, and as it seems, soon after, in June, defeated and took prisoner the Captain of Calais, John de Beauchamp. Minot regards the capture of Guisnes as a set-off to this success, over which they were too jubilant.

34. **boun ȝow to biker.** Comp. 'And latte Rowlande thedire Ryde | þat ever to Bekyre es bayne,' The Sege off Melayne, 185, 6. For the transitive use of *biker*, comp. the quotation in iv. 85, note. For *habide* and *bede* in l. 35, see v. 40, note.

40. **haue heuin till his mede**, as his reward. Comp. viii. 2; and 'yf þey wyll have hevyn to þer mede,' The xv Tokens, 26 (Anglia, iii. p. 534); 'And lene vs so oure liue to lede | þat we mai all haue heuene to mede,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 188/645, 6.

APPENDIX

I.

The following piece, from Brit. Mus. MS. Harley, 4690, was printed in Ritson's notes to Minot and in The Brut or Chronicles of England, ed. Brie, i. p. 287. There is another copy in Hearne's Robert of Gloucester, vol. i, Preface, p. lxxxiii.

And þen þe Engliche men towken many off þe Skottes [f. 79 b²].
horses and priken after þe Skottes & slewe hem downe
righte. And there men mighte see the nowbell king Edward off Englonde
& his ffolke hough mannefully þei chaseden the Skottes wereoff þis
romance was made.

There men mighte well see	
Many a Skotte lightly flee,	
And þe Engliche after priking	
Witþ scharp swerdes þem stiking.	
And þere her baners weren ffounde	[f. 80 a ¹ . 5
Alle displayedde on the grounde,	
And layne starkly on blode,	
As þei hadde ffought on þe flode.	
Butt þe Scottes, ille mote þei þee,	
pought þe Englisch adreint schulde be :	10
For bi cause þei mighte not flee,	
Butte iff þei adreinte schulde bee.	
Butte þei kepte hem manly on londe,	
So þatte þe Scottes might nott stonde	
And felde hem downe to grounde,	15
Many þowsandes in þatte stounde ;	
And þe Engliche men pursuyede hem so,	
Tille þe flode was alle a-goo.	
Alle þus þe Skottes discomfite were,	
In litell tyme wiþ grete feere.	20

ffor no noþer wise dide þei stryve,
 Butt as .xx. schepe among wolfes fyve.
 ffor .v. off hem þen were
 Ayenste an Englischman þere.
 So þere itte was welle semyng, 25
 þatte *witþ* multitude is no scomfiting.
 Butt *witþ* God fulle off mighte,
 Wham he will helpe in trewe ffighte,
 So was þis bi Goddes grace
 Discomfiture off Skottes in þat place; 30
 That men cleped Halidown hille;
 ffor þere þis bateill befelle,
 Atte Berwike, be side þe towne.
 This was do *witþ* mery sowne,
 Wiþ pipes, trompes & nakers þer to; 35
 And loude clariounes þei blew also.
 And þere þe Scottes leyen dede,
 XXX. M¹, be yonde Twede,
 & v. M¹ tolde there to,
Witþ .vii. C. xii. and mo : 40
 & of Englischemen but sevenne,
 Worschipped be God in hevenne!
 & þat wer men on ffote goyng,
 By foly of her owne doyng.
 On seinte Margeteys eue, as y yow tell, 45
 Befille þe victory of Halidoune hille,
 In þe yere off God almightie,
 A M¹ iii. c. and ii. and þritty, [f. 80 a².
 Atte þis discomffiture
 þe Englisch knightes towke her hure, 50
 Of þe Skottes þatte weren dede,
 Cloþes and haberiounes for her mede;
 And watte euer þei might finde
 On þe Skottes, þei lefte not behinde;
 And þe knaues, by her purchas, 55
 Hadde þere a mery solas:
 For þei hadde, for her degree,

In alle her lyffe þe better to be.
 Alle þus þe bateille towke ending;
 But y canne not telle off þe þen going 60
 Off þe too kingges, were þei become,
 & weþer þei wenten oute or home.
 Butt Godde, þatte is heven king,
 Sende vs pees and gode ending.

II.

This poem is from MS. Cotton Galba E. ix, where it almost immediately precedes Minot's songs. It is a translation from a French original, of which there is a copy on the first fly-leaves of MS. Harleian, Brit. Mus. 746, another in MS. Cotton Julius A. v, ff. 177b-179, a third in MS. GG. 1. 1, University Library, Cambridge, f. 120 a² (on which see Romania, xv. p. 283), and an abbreviated Latin version in MS. Cotton Vespasian E. vii, f. 89. (See Ward's Catalogue of Romances in the British Museum, i. pp. 299, 309, 322.) Our poem follows the first of these closely; it was most probably written with a view to discredit Henry the Fourth. According to Otterbourne, p. 210 (ed. Hearne), he had spoken of himself, while still Henry of Lancaster, as Merlin's Boar of Commerce who would lead back the scattered flocks to the lost pastures. But the poem says he is the Mole cursed from God's mouth, in whose days terrible evils must come on England. It is a good example of the political use made of the popular belief in the 'prophecies of Merlin.' (See Archaeologia, xx. pp. 250-271.)

Ritson printed ll. 143-188 in his edition of Minot, pp. 96-98. A prose version, of which an extract is given in Halliwell's Shakespeare, ix. p. 401, is very closely related to this poem.

Here bigins prophecies of Merlin. [f. 49 a².

Herkenes speches of manikyn thinges,
 Of gret ferlys & of mani kynges,
 þat has bene us be forne
 And þe tyme sen God was borne

60. þen] yen R. 4. Perhaps, *And sen þe tyme þat God was borne*;
 see Minot, iii. 109.

And how kynges þat *after* ure day 5
 Sal reng when þat we ar away,
 And of þaire ayres þat er onborne,
 And how Ingland sal be lorne :
 Merlyn spekes al of þis,
 And of othere thinges þat was & es, 10
 And it sal be *after* vs.
 A kyng Henri þe thrid begynes þus,
 A lambe in Winchestre borne sal be,
 A white chin haue sal he,
 & he sal haue, als Merlyn sais, 15
 Sothefast lepes in al his dais.
 In his hert, forsothe, wretyn sal be,
 Halynes, wil wit ȝe.
 A gode hous he sal ger dight,
 þat sal be of ful fair sight; 20
 Bot fully made sal it noght be
 In his tyme, for sothe wit ȝe,
 We for his Ending! whils he es truande
 A wulf sal come of vnkouthe lande, [f. 49 b¹.
 And in his kynrik sal he wone, 25
 And ful gret harme he sal *him* done.
 A ful grete were raies sal he,
 Bot, at þe ending, þe lamb maister sal be.
 He sal ouercome þe wulf at þe last,
 Thurgh help of a rede fox of þe northwest. 30
 And *after* þat tyme, with in a stond,
 þe lamb with ded beis broght to grond.
 And when he dies, for sothe wit ȝe,
 In unkouth lande sal his sede be.
 And sua sal þe land duel & a byde 35
 With outen any socoure, vntil a tide.
 And þare sal come a dragon of þe lamb sede,
 Menged with *mercy* & with felhede;

5. Omit *þat*. 11. *it*] perhaps *þat*. 14. *chin*] *thing* MS.
 19. In the margin, *Westminister*. 29. *wulf*] *o* is written over
 the *u* MS. 31. *astond* in one word MS.

And right als a gayt sal he haue a berde,
 And al his famen sal for him be ferde : 40
 And he sal gif schadow to Ingland al,
 For cald & for hete þat he it gif sal.
 þe ta fote in Eurwik sete sal he,
 His other fote in London, for sothe wit 3e :
 Thre wonyngstedes he sal umlap þat tide ; 45
 To Wales sal he opon his mouthe wide,
 And sal ger quak be north & be southe,
 For dred & for aghe þat comes of his mouthe.
 His eyn sal strik to many contre ;
 þe ande of his mouthe ful swet sal be. 50
 And he sal ouercom many vnkouthe lyde
 þat weres agaynes him, & many misbyde.
 In his tyme sal bekes rene al of blode,
 And he sal mak walles þat sal do litel gode.
 With his sede þas walles sal dere, 55
 þat sal turn afterward þe land vnto were.
 After þat tyme, sithen at þe last,
 A folk sal come out of þe north west,
 Thurgh a wyked grayhond led sal be ;
 And þan sal þai dye be a syde o þe se : 60
 Mikel folk þat tyme, with outen any faile,
 With dole sal dye at þat bataile.
 In his tyme the sone als blode sal be rede,
 þat sal betaken many mans dede,
 And spiling of blode of many men bedene, 65
 Thurgh dintes of swerds þat scharp er & kene.
 þe folk as stepchildre sal duel & abyde
 In many grete perels vntil a tyde.
 þe dragon sal foster a fox þat sal be vngayne,
 For he sal werre with him with might & mayne, 70
 In lif of þe dragon, als Merlin saies,
 Bot it sal not be ended in his lyf daies.
 And al his famen ouercom sal he wele,

39. In the margin, *Edward j.* 42. *gif*] perhaps *þeme* is to be read.
 51. *lyde*] *tyde* MS. 55. Perhaps, *His sede with þas walles sal he dere.*
 61. In the margin, *ffaukirk.*

And wile þe me his land euerilkadele,
 And an of þe best knyght halden sal he be, [f. 49 b². 75
 þat es in þis werld, forsothe wit ȝe,
 And sithen at þe last dy sal he
 Be side a fer marche of another contre.
 þan sal þe land duel in were,
 Als a stepchild withonten þe mere. 80
 Wailoway sal þai sing þen alder mast,
 Als a stepchild in land þat es wast.

A fter þe dragon sal come a gaite ;
 He sal haue hornes of siluer & saite.
 Right as a buc sal he haue a berd ; 85
 His famen for him ful litel sal be ferd.
 An ande of him sal out fare,
 Sal hunger betaken & mikel oper care,
 And dy'e'ng of folk & tynying of lande :
 For he sal tyne mikel þat he before fande. 90
 And Merlin, forsothe, in his boke sais
 þat hordom sal be used mikel in his dais.
 And þis ilk gaite j neuen began,
 He sal com out of Carnarvian ;
 And to another land wend sal he, 95
 To sek him þe flour of lif þat sal be so fre.
 Mikel folk of þe land, in tyme of the gate,
 Sal dye with dole, as j wele waite,
 Wharfor þat folk of othere contre,
 Ful bald & ful ken agayn [him] sal be : 100
 And in hys tyme briges sal be
 Of armed folke in dik of the se.
 Stanes sal fal ful euen in þe land,
 þat befor in castel war wont for to stand.
 And, in his tyme als it sal seme right 105
 þat Ouse al offire brene sal bright.

78. a nother MS. 85. buc] perhaps hawk is to be read. 86.
 beferd in one word MS. 87. And an MS. him] þam MS. 88.
 be taken MS. oper] of þare MS. 93. nenen MS. 100. him]
 omit. MS. 104. forto MS. 106. Ouse] hous MS.

A bataile alswa sal be in a feld,
 Pat es right schapen as it war a scheld.
 Opon a narm of þe se, *wit̃* outhen any fail,
 þar 'sal' be sett þat ilk bataile : 110
 þar mai men finde ded grete plente,
 Als men dos fisches in þe saltse;
 þar sal be fallen many wight heued;
 Many dohti man þar sal be leued.
 & wit ȝe forsothe, *wit̃* outhen any faile, 115
 It sal be called þe wikked bataile.

Of þe gaites blode sal come a bere,
 And he sal rais agayn *him* were;
 And þe gait sal tyn mikil of his land,
 & mikel of his riches þat he befor fand; 120
 Scham sal hi'm' think þan at þe last,
 A pouer sal he gedre ful ȝern & fast;
 þan sal he cleth *him* in a lyon skyne, [f. 50 a¹.
 And al þat he outraid & more sal he wyne.
 A folk sal come out of þe north west, 125
 For to help þe gait þan at þe last,
 þat sal ger þe gait douted be
 In his awen land & in other contre.
 þat folk sal come to þe gait þen,
 And þai sal venge þe gait of his fomen. 130
 And efter all þat tyme, wele wit ȝe,
 In mekill sorow and pyne end sall he.
 And þan sall all þe land, als the stori leres,
 Efter him be fild full of Henueres;
 And þai sall wirk grete trey and tene 135
 To þe folk þat bifore þam has bene.
 In the tyme of the gait with owten ani faile,
 Sall ane Aren spring up out of Kornwaile :
 All his faire fethers of gold sall be;
 And in Knaresmire end sall he. 140

117. *Bannokbourn* is written above the line. 126. *forto* in one word MS. 127. *for to* after *douted* would improve the rhythm.
 140. So MS.; rather read *Knavesmire*.

For treson and falshed þat in him bese fun,
 þe name off þat Aren es cald Gaunston.
 Efter þe gayt sall cum a lyon,
 þat in hert ful fers and fell sal be fun :
 His bihalding sall be ful of pete, 145
 His sembland to seke *reght* lykind sall be :
 His brest alswa sal be slokening of threst,
 Vntill all [þat] lufes pese and rest.
 His tong sall speke wordes all of lewte ;
 His bering like a lamb meke sal be. 150
 He sall have trey and tene in biginni[n]g,
 To chistise misdoers of wrang lifing.
 And als thurgh felnes seþin sall he seke,
 Till he haue made þe folk als lamb to be meke.
 He sall be cald in þe werld, als wide als it es, 155
 Bare of hele of nobillay and of felnes.
 Als a lamb sall he [be] milde and meke,
 And vnto rightwisnes ay sall he seke.
 þis ilk beste þat es þe bare named biforn
 Cumes out of Windesore, þare bese he born. 160
 Whetand his tuskes sall þat ilk bare
 Fare thurgh foure landes þare he come neuer are :
 And euermore his iornay euer ilkadele
 Sall he do hardily, nobilly and wele ;
 Till þe burgh Ierusalem and to þe haly land, 165
 Sall he find none oganis him to stand.
 Spayne sall trembill for tene and for care ;
 Aragown sall haue drede & dout of þe bare.
 In France sall he sett his heuid biforn.
 His tail sal rest in Yngland whare he was born. 170
 He sal whet his tuskes on Pariss þates ; [f. 50 a².
 Almayn sal be ful ferd for his lates.
 He sall ger reuers & mani grete flode
 Be rinand with hernes and with rede blode.
 þe greses þat er grene sal he rede make ; 175

142. should read *Gauunston*. 145. In the margin, *Edward iij*.
 146. *reght*] *rest* MS. 148. *þat* omitted in MS. 151. *biginnig* MS.
 157. *be* supplied by R. 166. *oganis*] *ogains* R.

Mani man for þe bare sal trebill & quake.
 In alkins landes win sall þe bare
 þat ani of his eldres has losed are.
 So nobil and so doghty sall þe bare be
 þat he sal or he dy were coronis thre. 180
 Vnderlout sall he mak ilk outen land
 To be at his will, and bow till his hand,
 Wele more sall þe bare conquer and win
 þan ani did bifore of all his end kin.
 All lordes sall him lout with out ani lese, 185
 And þan sall his land be in swith gude pese :
 Sepin in a fer land end sall he,
 And for his nobilles be grauen bitwen kinges thre.
 Efter him sal *cum* ane ass, wit 3e ful wele,
 He sall haue fete of lede and heid of stele, 190
 Of bras sall his hert be & yren his skyn ;
 He sall be harder beste þan ani of his kin.
 In all his time, with owten ani lese,
 Sall he lede his land in rest & in pese.
 And in þe biginni[n]g of his kingrike, 195
 Sall he big a cete and wall it and dike.
 His voice and his cryng, als I understand,
 Sall be herd swith wele in euerilka land.
 And also þis ilk ass for his lewte,
 Mekil part of his time praised sal be. 200
 þan sal he gif þe lordschip of all his land
 Vntill ane Arne and sese it in his hand :
 þat Arne sal 3eme it wel at his might,
 Fro alkins ennies, bi day and by night ;
 Wele sal he 3eme it vntill a tyde 205
 þat he be ouercumen and kasten with pride.
 þan sall be sorow to one and to oþer,
 When þe Arne sall be slane wth swerd of his broþer.
 Sepen vnto þe ass falles þe land,
 And he sal 3eme it wele in his awin hand. 210
 þe land in his time wele 3emid sal be,

184. *ena*] perhaps *endur* is to be read.195. *biginnig* MS.204. *ennies* MS.

And of all gudes haueand plente.
 Seþin sal a moldwerp be ȝemer in land,
 Weried with Goddes mowth mai ȝe warand,
 A swith grete wretche þe moldwarp sal be; 215
 In euerilka nede fast sal he fle.
 His 'hide' sall be rogh als a gait skin,
 Ilk a stede bese þe wer þat he cumes in.
 And on him sall light, who so right redes, [f. 50 b¹.
 Þe vengeance of God for ald euill dedes. 220
 He sal be ful wrangwis in euerilka wane,
 And grace in his time gettes he nane.
 In þe land sal be at his biginni[n]g,
 Plente of mone and all oþer thing.
 He sall be mekill praised vntill a tide, 225
 Till he be casten down with sin & with pride:
 Þan sall cum a dragon ful fell & ful scharp,
 And he sall raise were oganis þe moldwarp;
 And als þe folk sall find withouten ani faile,
 Founded on a stane bese þat bataile. 230
 And als with þat dragon þan sall be prest
 A wolf þat sall cum out of the west:
 He sall bede bataill ful fell & ful scharp,
 And rise with þe dragon oganis þe moldwarp.
 Both þe dragon and þe wolf w^{ith} mekill might 235
 Sall raise þaire tales samyn on hight.
 Out of Yreland þan sall cum a liown,
 And hald with þe wolf and with þe dragown:
 Þan sall all England quakeand be,
 Als leues þat hinges on þe espe tre. 240
 Þan sall þe moldwe[r]p be sore adred,
 With þam thre sal he be so straytly sted.
 His folk sall he gader and samyn þam þen,
 For to ȝeme his land fro his famen.
 And so ouercomen þan sall he be, 245
 Þe moldwerp with his men fast sal þai fle.
 Þan in þat ilk time þe castels all
 Þat standes on Terns bank down sall þai fall.

And þe water sall seme als it war dry,
 So many ded bodise sal þarin ly. 250
 Þe foure chefe waters þat er in I[n]gland
 Sall rin all of rede blude, als I vnderstand.
 Þe grete hilles for drede clouen sall be,
 And þe moldwerp for ferd sall oway fle.
 Þe dragon and þe wolf and þe liowne 255
 Sall chace þe moldwerp, in feld and in toune,
 Þan sall Ingland on euerilka side,
 Be with owten þemer vntill a tide.
 Þe moldwerp at þe last bese leued noght els
 Bot ane yle in þe se, þat he in dwells, 260
 Þe twa partes sall he gif oway of þat land,
 Forto saue þe thrid part in his owin hand.
 And so sall þe moldwerp lede all his life
 In were & in wandreth and in mekill strif.
 In tyme of þe moldwerp, be þe full balde, 265
 Sall þe hate bathes bigin to be calde. [f. 50 b².
 And efter þat, euill ded dy sall he sone,
 For þe wikked sines þat he has done,
 Without any lesing, in flodes of þe se,
 Þurgh Vengance of God drowned bese he. 270
 Þan sall all I[n]gland on wonder wise,
 Be eyn partid in thre parties;
 Waters and woddess, feldes and towne
 Bytwene þe dragon and þe lyoune,
 And so, efter þat time, named sall it be 275
 Þe land of conquest in ilk cuntre.
 Þus sall þe ayres of Ingland kinde
 Pas out of heritage, als we here finde.
 Explicit *prophetia* de Merlyn.

III.

This poem is found in the Liber Loci Benedicti de Whalley, Brit. Museum MS. Add. 10374, a sort of commonplace book written in the 14th century. It has been printed with other extracts from the MS. in Whitaker's History of Whalley, ed. iv. vol. i. p. 155.

§ Ceste est la copie de letre qe Dauid le Bruys maunda [f. 110 a.
a Philippe de Valoys Roy de ffrance.

Ore escoutez de Dauyd le Bruys	
Come a Philippe de Valoys maund[a] saluz.	
Per ceo qe auoms entenduz	
Qe moult de gentz auoms perduz,	
Vous face a sauoir qe bien tart	5
Si auoms fait nostre part,	
Taunt auoms tenuz voz maundementz	
Qe nous sumes perduz & noz gentz,	
La terre Descoce ay refuse,	
& en Engleterre su demore,	10
Tout soul saunz nul amy,	
& en garde daustry.	
Jeo me confesse a toutes gentz,	
Qe trope auoms fait malement	
Quant nous entrans en Engleterre	15
En absence le Roy de leuer guerre,	
Qare nous nauoioms riene a faire,	
Mes grant mescheance pur nous aquere.	
Nous entendismes bien passere	
Parmy la terre saunz destourbere ;	20
Meis Lerceuesqe oue poeir grant	
Nous vynt toust encountraunt ;	
Le Percy & le Moubray	
Se portèrent bien al iournay.	
Nous nauoyoms grace ne poeir	25
Encountre lour bataille estere ;	
A la nouelle croyce de Dureme	
La perdymes nostre Realme ;	
La fumes pris en fuaunt :	
Philippe, gardez vous de taunt.	30

Qe nous fumes pris en *notre* trespase,
 Dount sumes venuz de haut en bas ;
 Come la fortune est ordyne,
 Primes mountams de gre en gre ;
 Quant estoy venus al pluis haute 35
 Si perdy moun regne qe ore me faute.
 Vous me maundastes *par verite*,
 Qe en Engleterre ne *seroit* troue,
 ffors chapellayns dames & moignes
 & autres femmes & berchers : 40
 Meys trouames illoeqes grant gent,
 & ceo nous vynt en *confusement* :
 Dount nous auoms bien aparceu
 Qe le Roy du ciel est toust somelu
 En qil soit oue son poeir 45
 Le Roy du ciel luy voet aidere ;
 Pur ceo sume[s] de sa partie.
 Escoutez, Philippe, qe ieo en die :
 Tout soit il *notre* frere en ley,
 Moulte auoms trespasse vers luy : 50
 Et tu, Philippe, en grant outrage
 Retenez son heritage.
 Estoit a grant sire anaunt : [f. 110 b.
 Heritage est descendaunt,
 Qe nul homme ne poet iuger, 55
 Qe heritage doit remountere,
 Meis descendre de gre en gre ;
 Cest est ley *par verite*.
 Moun pierre Robert quant il vesqist
 Roy Descoce a tort luy fist ; 60
 Et nous regnames apres sa mort,
 S auoms troue *notre* tort.
 Qi en fausyne se regna,
 Le tierce gre ne auera ia ;
 Nous auoms regne a taunt en cea ; 65
 Regne ore qi qe purra.

31. *trespase*] the last letter has faded out.

36. *ore*] *oze* MS.

Meis ore, Philippe, auysez vous :
 Si prenez ensaumple de nous,
 Sicome auoms fait & les noz,
 Si ferreiez vous & les voz.
 Vous me maundastes votre messagere,
 Qe a Loundres dussoms encountrere;
 Voz gentz sount venuz deuaunt,
 Philippe, ore vous aiourne taunt.
 Votre Seneschal fait purueance,
 Meis vous demorez trope en ffraunce :
 Par ceo, Philippe, hastez a nous,
 Qi la sumes trouez trestoutz.

70

75

IV.

This poem is from MS. Harley, 4843, a large folio of the 15th century containing collections which mostly relate to Durham. It has only been printed in Hutchinson's History of Durham, vol. ii. p. 342. The glosses printed at the foot of the page are written between the lines.

Anno domini millesimo CCC xl. vi. die martis in vigilia [f. 241 a.
 Luce euangeliste hora matutina ix^a commissum fuit bellum
 inter Anglos & Scottos non longe a Dunelmia in loco vbi nunc stat
 crux vulgariter dicta Newillcrosse.

· Incipit prologus

O miranda bonitas Ihesu saluatoris,
 Humiles qui respicit omnibus in horis,
 Superbos humilians cuspide meroris,
 Quos ceca cupiditas tenuit erroris.

Non est sapiencia certe contra deum,
 Villa nec prudencia valet contra eum;
 Nunc vni nunc alteri dat deus tropheum,
 Judas¹ set preualuit nunc in Amorreum².

5

¹ gens anglorum.² gentem scoticam.

Benedictus deus qui nos visitauit,
 Ab Egipti carcere¹ qui nos liberauit, 10
 Qui sub nostris pedibus² Pharaonem strauit,
 filios qui Israel diu captiuauit.

Explicit prologus. Incipit tractatus belli.

In Francorum partibus rege debellante,
 Et sibi subicere Caleis laborante,
 Sathane satellites³, treuga non obstante, 15
 Irruunt in Angliam, vt solebant ante.

Rex Dauit indomitus, vana spe seductus,
 Et Francorum litteris falsis circumductus,
 Ad Ledel se properat, ad suorum luctus,
 Nam patet per exitum qualis fuit fructus. 20

ffructus paruus affuit, licet capiebat
 Vnum forciunculum sibi quod nocebat,
 Proth dolor! set militem⁴ viuum quem videbat,
 Post visum interimit, licet non decebat,

Non decet ad principes nec ad reges magnos 25
 Ad vindictam pessimam nimis esse pronos.
 Qui studet destruere fideles colonos,
 Vix sedebit filius eius super thronos.

Capto forciunculo, Dauit⁵ est letatus
 Plus quam credi poterit, & est exaltatus, 30
 Sic, sic per Achitofel⁶ est consiliatus,
 Partesque destruere vult episcopatus⁷.

Temptauit multociens Duglas⁸ suo more, [f. 241 b.
 Vt ab hoc proposito, & ab hoc errore
 Dauit regem verteret, suo pro honore, 35
 Error sed nouissimus peior est priore.

Captis, raptis omnibus ad Lidel inuentis,
 Versus austrum properant in furore mentis,
 Non erant sed memores prophete dicentis,
 Salua locum domini & ipsius gentis. 40

¹ scottica tyrannide.

² angli.

³ scotti.

⁴ es de selbe.

⁵ bruy.

⁶ malcolmum flenyng (sic).

⁷ dunelmie.

⁸ willelmus.

Occidebant homines vtpote bidentes,
 Non misericordiam in se plus habentes,
 Heu! Cuthberti presulis sic tractabant gentes
 Horum sunt plures inopes, erant qui potentes.

Spoliant ecclesias, rapiunt iumenta, 45
 Et de quibus sumpserant nummos & talenta,
 Comburunt & grangias, simul & frumenta,
 Parum parcunt talibus falsa fide tenta.

Vox in Rama¹ sonuit fletus et ploratus,
 Quum vir cum gregibus fugit desolatus, 50
 Panem petit paruulus, nec est sibi datus,
 Ex hinc lamentabiles dabat eiulatus.

Tunc fugit plebs vlulans partes ad australes,
 Non succursus hominum sperans aliquales,
 Set inter angustias voces promunt tales, 55
 Cuthberte, nos adiuua, si quo modo vales.

Cuthbertus, non immemor tante feritatis,
 Et vim grandem sustinens sue libertatis,
 Sic precatur dominum nostris pro peccatis
 Horum sors & victoria cessit desperatis. 60

Ad Dunelmum properant Scotti maledicti,
 Deridentes Angli[c]os ac si essent victi,
 Ad nemus de Beureparke festinant predicti,
 Vbi erant postea fortiter afflicti.

ffigentes tentoria leti comederunt, 65
 Nam dispersos Anglicos nuncii² dixerunt;
 Scottis nescientibus prompti set fuerunt,
 Aput Aukland Anglici mane vt viderunt.

Noctis sub silencio quando rex³ dormiuit,
 Duglas cum complicibus ad predandum iuit, 70
 Misit suos catulos⁴ huc illuc, vt sciuit,
 Set ruinam maximam venturam nesciuit. [f. 242 a.]

41. vt pote MS.

¹ northumbria.

² monachi trans missi.

³ edwardus.

⁴ predones.

Luce¹ in vigilia, fere in aurora,
 Venerunt ad Merington non in bona hora,
 Depredantur patriam voce cum sonora, 75
 Set in luctum vertitur risus sine mora.

Ipsis depredantibus, ecce summo mane
 Quedam pars² exercitus gentis Anglicane
 In predones irruit, & fugerunt plane
 Omnes, velut lepores persequente cane. 80

Sicut canes lepores insequi solebant,
 Sic nostrates³ Scoticos vbique cingebant,
 In agris & semitis mortui cadebant,
 Quia sparsis cerebris stare non valebant.

Agmina prospiciens Duglas Anglicorum 85
 Et progressum indicans sagittariorum,
 Non stetit ulterius ad tenendum forum,
 Set iuit celeriter ad relictum chorum⁴.

Cum venisset igitur Duglas infra nemus,
 Dixit; fratres, surgite, noua nos habemus, 90
 Ad arma concurrite & post ordinemus
 Si pro nostro commodo sit vt nos pugnemus.

Tribus in agminibus venit gens Anglorum,
 Et in prima acie est gens Northumbrorum.
 Sunt viginti milia certe pugnatorum, 95
 Et Percy quem nouimus ductor est eorum.

Si fas esset vincere ipsius vexillum
 Et Neuell similiter qui stat iuxta illum,
 Caperemus Anglicos tempus post pusillum,
 Et Archiepiscopum⁵ veluti pupillum. 100

Tunc dixit, vt dicitur, Daud ad maiores;
 Non sunt nunc in Anglia viri bellatores,
 Non sunt nisi clerici, aque portitores,
 ffient ergo martires isti confessores.

¹ euangeliste.
 scottorum.

² bertram coupland.
⁵ W. de Souch.

³ anglici.

⁴ exercitum

Non est nisi palea hec plebs congregata, 105
Seges est in Francia valde fatigata,
Capiemus Anglicos si permittant fata,
Velut auceps volucrem cum sit inuiscata.

Philippus, rex Francie, noster specialis, [f. 242 b.
 Nobis scripsit litteram, & est tenor talis; 110
Non est nunc in Anglia sexus aliqualis
Caput qui defendere potest suum malis.

Wilham¹ illa agmina que sic indicasti,
 Ex defectu cerebri forte machinasti,
 Extra cursum solitum quia vigilasti 115
 Tu ex vno homine duos estimasti.

Si tu sis perteritus, vade vias tuas,
 Et fuge velociter ne percussus ruas,
 Donec habuerimus manus nostras duas,
Non timemus Anglicos nec cautelas suas. 120

Ad hec verba motus est Duglas vehementer,
 Et circumstantibus dixit luculenter,
 Hodie non fugiam, stabo set potenter,
 Et hoc luet plurimus incrassatus venter.

Non Anglorum, domine, curo de cautelis, 125
Regnoque Scocie ero vir fidelis,
Quod si non credideris & probare velis,
Hoc probetur hodie factis non loquelis.

Tunc ad arma bellica Scotti concurrerunt,
 Clipeis ab aureis montes splenduerunt, 130
 Juxta regis latera fortes confluerunt,
 Et pre magno gaudio tripudiauerunt.

Venit eo tempore missus a priore,
 Vnus simplex monachus tractans de amore,
 Quem iussit interimi Daud in furore, 135
 Set non ita factum est vt precepit ore.

116. *estimasti* is written as a correction above *machinasti*.

¹ duglas.

Exeunt¹ de nemore insimul globati,
 Gladiis & fustibus fortiter stuffati,
 Licet erant omnibus bene preparati,
 Erant nichilominus excommunicati. 140

Scotis audientibus turmas segregatim,
 En! nostrates veniunt valde seriatim,
 Cum tubis clangentibus accedunt paulatim,
 Ad ictus, ad verbera conuenerunt statim.

Currunt Scottis obuiam mox architene[n]tes, 145
 Et transmittunt angelos² ipsos persequentes, [f. 243 a.
 Sic purgati fuerant scotticorum dentes,
 Quod sunt qui relictis sunt adhuc conquerentes.

Irruerunt insimul Anglici & Scotti,
 Vt leones rabidi circa predam moti, 150
 Set quod non dixerant culpas sacerdoti,
 Per ictus & verbera erant culpis loti.

Quia suspicabilis Duglas fuit Dauid³,
 Ad iuncturam igitur primam festinauit.
 Quem in ictu oculi Bertram trucidauit, 155
 Viuis tum captus est, licet non putauit.

Nescio quali ductus sit Dauid⁴ fantasia,
 Recte cum Angligenis iunxit alta via,
 Benedictis domini matre et Maria,
 Non vt ipse dixerat stetit propheta. 160

Prophetauit inscius vtpote volebat,
 Set non ita accidit sicuti dicebat,
 Laudes cum victoria sibi ascribebat,
 Set stetit oppositum antequam sciebat.

Stetit Percy⁵ dimicans fortiter cum Scottis, 165
 Cum magnates plurimi starent a remotis,
 Quod Angus⁶ percipiens viribus cum totis
 Ad Percy se properat cum ducentis notis.

159. *bñdictō* MS.

168. *proparat* MS.

¹ scotti.

² sagittas.

³ rex.

⁴ rex.

⁵ henricus.

⁶ comes.

Non auertunt facies comes nec Henricus,
*Donec victus fuerat omnis inimicus*¹, 170
Vix in campo steterat diues vel mendicus,
Per quem tantus periit sanguis impudicus,

Tunc Archiepiscopus de Suche qui est dictus,
*Ad creandos ordines*² *venit valde strictus,*
Quotquot ordinauerat senciebant ictus, 175
Ex hinc imperpetuum fiat benedictus.

*ffuit nam diaconus*³ *Mowbray vir vrbanus,*
*Atque subdiaconus Okyll*⁴ *ille canus,*
*Qui ad istos ordines fuit tam prophanus*⁵
Quod non potest fieri post hec capellanus. 180

Illi namque clerici dicti confessores,
*Quos Dauit vocauerat aque portitores*⁶,
*Absoluunt*⁷ *in fustibus suos derisores,*
Sicque iacent mortui velut peccatores.

Morique de Morauia vir inordinatus, [f. 243 b. 185
Contra ius ecclesie comes nuncupatus,
Quia duxit coniugem non licenciatus,
Nunc ad istos ordines fuit degradatus.

*Thomas*⁸ *cancellarius ductor regis Dauit,*
Qui pomposas literas sepius dictauit, 190
Quia terras Anglie nimis adoptauit,
Ipsam nunc exigua terra saturauit.

Comes de Morauia Anglicis ingratus,
A nostris magnatibus nimis honoratus,
Quia venit contra nos cum David armatus, 195
Jacet inter mortuos dire vulneratus.

Senescallus Scocie videns ordinatos,
Super terram mortuos iacere prostratos,
Ordinari noluit inter memoratos,
Iter set arripuit inter effugatos. 200

¹ scoticanus.² dandos ictus.³ episcopi.⁴ robertus.⁵ in occidendo.⁶ inabiles ad preliandum.⁷ occidunt.⁸ charters.

Gens *nostra* viriliter stetit Anglicana,
 Set fugit celeriter turba Scoticana,
 Currebant *per aspera insimul & plana*,
 Sperantes euadere, set spes fuit vana.

Scotis fugientibus ipsos sunt secuti, 205
 Equites & pedites *per paludes luti*,
 Multi vero capti sunt, multi sunt minuti,
 Pauci set ad *propria* peruenerunt tuti.

Videns rex¹ attonitus quod fugissent sui,
 Volebat se reddere set nesciuit cui, 210
 Volens vexillarius² eius vita frui.
 Dixit Coupland³, cape hunc, eius⁴ seruus⁵ fui.

Mox in Dauit guttere Coupland misit manus,
 Set in *quantum* potuit restitit prophanus,
 Velit, nolit, captus est, set vt vir vrbanus 215
 ffecit secum armiger⁶ volens quod sit sanus.

Set non ita sanus est, quin architenentes
 Cum sagittis ferreis visitabant dentes;
 Est vnum prouerbium dictum inter gentes,
 Deridentur sepius qui sunt deridentes. 220

Non erant nunc ordines nisi speciales,
 Qui non sunt mortui omnes capitales,
 Cumque congregauerat suos consodales
 Senescallus Scocie erunt generales. [f. 244 a.]

Wath qui *sanctuarium* Cuthberti destruxit, 225
 ffidelem qui militem occidens seduxit,
 Qui leonum catulos super nos induxit,
 Et comburens segetes risit & non luxit.

Wath qui terras diuidit quas non adquisiuit,
 Alienas detinens pluresque concupiuit, 230
 Qui vixisse potuit pace set non sciuit,
 ffoueas confodiens in quas dissiliuit.

¹ dauid.² thomas carre.³ iohanni.⁴ s.⁵ a.⁶ coupland.

Wath qui regis Anglie filiam despexit,
Propter Vnam pellicem quam sors sursum vexit,
Lyam lippam oculis rex¹ Dauid dilexit, 235
Set Rachel² pulcherrimam vix gaudens respexit.

Non laudetur aliquis propter istud factum,
Nam fuit miraculum quicquid erat actum,
Laudetur set Dominus qui custodit pactum,
Et Cuthberti presulis vendicat ius fractum. 240

Laudes deceptorias cunctas respuamus,
Et ad thronum gratie preces effundamus,
Vt per temporalia sic, sic transeamus,
Semper eternalia ne nos amittamus.

Amen.

¹ scocie.

² reginam scocie.

NOTES ON APPENDIX

I.

Halidon Hill.

1-7. This passage is rendered in Caxton's Chronicle, ed. 1502, 'And there men myght see many a Scottysshman caste downe vnto y^e grounde | & the baners dysplayed hackyd into peces | & many a gode haberyoyne of stele in y^e blode bath.'

9-13. The position taken up by the English is described in a speech attributed to Douglas by the writer of the Gesta Edwardi Terti, 'Nunc alia fortuna tanquam inclusos illos in nostris finibus huc adduxit, hinc, siquidem a tergo villam optimam viris bellicosis munitam; a dextris vero pelagum spatiosum et altum, a sinistris autem alveum fluminis de Twede cujus intumescens mare riparum marginem jam implevit,' p. 115.

41. 'In tanta siquidem caede nisi miles unus et armiger unus de exercitu Anglicano, et pauci pedites ceciderunt,' id. p. 116.

61. Whither they betook themselves, i. e. Edward the Third and Edward Baliol.

II.

The Prophecies of Merlin.

13. The Harleian MS. (afterwards quoted as H.) has, '[U]n aignel vendra hors Wincestre qⁱ a vera blaunche launge & levers veritables,' and the Cambridge MS. agrees with it; *thing* may then be corrected into *tunge*. But the Latin version gives 'lanam habens albam,' which is explained in the margin by 'laneam habens barbam.' This perhaps points to *chin* in the sense of *beard* as the true reading. According to Trivet, Annales, p. 280, Henry was generally identified with Merlin's lynx.

19. A gode hous, 'une mesone de Dieu,' H., 'vne mesoun deu Westm̄n,' Camb. MS., which properly means a hospital. Westminster Abbey is meant, 'þe newe worc of Wesmunstre þe king bigan þo anon | After is crouninge, & leide þe uerste ston,' Robert of Gloucester, 10658, 9, 'Faire is þe werk & hie in London at Westmynster Kyrke, | þat þe Kyng Henrie of his tresore did wirke,' Langtoft,

213/13, 4. Comp. also 'Eodem quoque anno (1245) dominus rex devotione ductus quam habuit ad gloriosum Dei regem et confessorem Edwardum, ecclesiam Sancti Petri Westmonasterii iussit veterem dirui in parte orientali cum ipsa turri et ipsam decentius sumptibus fecit propriis reparari', M. Paris, *Hist. Angl.*, ii. p. 506; and Stanley, *Memorials of Westminster Abbey*, pp. 122-6.

23. **truande**, trusting, unsuspecting of danger. The **wolf** is Simon de Montfort; the **rede fox**, Gilbert of Clare, Earl of Gloucester and Hertford, surnamed the Red, from his red hair, Atkyns's Gloucestershire (ed. 1712), p. 716.

34. Edward was crusading when his father died.

37. **dragon**. Edward the First was generally identified with Merlin's 'warlike boar coming out of Conan.'

45. Comp. 'He sais, Merlyn, in his deyn, of him has said, | þat þre regions in his bandons salle be laid,' Langtoft, ii. p. 282.

50, 1. 'Sa aleine *serra* si douce qe venkera meint *destrange terre*,' H.

54. Perhaps Berwick is meant. See Wright, *Pol. Songs*, p. 286, and Rishanger, *Chronica*, pp. 157, 375; and comp. 'Now dos Edward dike Berwik brode & long, | Als þei bad him pike, & scorned him in þer song. | Pikit him, & dikit him, on scorne said he, | He pikes and dikes in length, as him likes, how best it may be,' Langtoft, ii. pp. 272, 3. The emendation of l. 55 given in the footnote is supported by the Latin version, 'Construet muros quod gravabit semen ejus,' and by the MS. Cotton Julius, ' & fra mures q̃i enoient a son semaīl.'

59. The **grayhond** is Wallace; the **bataille** of l. 62 is Falkirk; and the **fox** of l. 69 is Bruce.

77, 8. 'Toward Scotlond to hie, at Burgh bi sandez he lay, | His tyme was no more sette here to regne in landes, | He died at a hamelette, men calle it Burgh bisandes,' Langtoft, ii. p. 340.

80-82. In MS. Cott. Julius this passage is, 'Si demurra la *terre* mult orphanycie sauntz bon governoure . . . Allas si *serra* un *chaunce comune* com de gentz orphanycies q̃i *reviendrunt en terre* de gaste.'

85. **buc**. 'barbe com hostour,' H., 'barbam ut *austurcum*,' MS. Cott. Vesp. The peregrine falcon has thick tufts of feathers below the eyes.

87, 88. These lines are corrupt. H. has ' & istera de ces narilz une broume qe signefiera doel & *grant* damage, famine & mortalite des gent & perte de *terre*.' There is nothing in any of the versions answering to l. 86; the scribe may have adapted it from l. 40, which he had under his eyes in the left-hand column almost opposite.

91. This **boke** is the Vaticanum Merlini.

96. 'Si quera flour de vie,' H., so in the other French version, J. But *lif* might also be read *lis*.

102. That is, the sea will be bridged over by the corpses of dead men.

106. 'En son temps *serra* ouse *escrelari* & *parira* *qe* *arde*,' H.; 'tempore suo *fluvius* *oste* (Ouse) *clarescet* & *parebit quod ardeat*,' MS. Cott. Vesp.

111, 12. 'Aliud etiam infortunium accidit Anglicis, quia, cum paulo ante transissent unam foveam magnam, in quam intrat fluxus maris, nomine Bannokeburne, et jam confusi vellent redire, multi nobiles et alii prae pressura cum equis in illam ceciderunt . . . et ideo Bannokeburne in ore Anglicorum erat per multos annos sequentes,' *Chronicon de Lanercost*, p. 226.

113. *wight* should be *white*; the *wikked* of l. 116 is also a mistranslation. Comp. 'E a cel bataille morrount mout des blanche testes, si *serra* apelle la *blanche* bataille,' H.; 'et in bello illo morientur *quamplures* alborum capitum *propter quod* nuncupabitur album bellum,' Vesp.

117. The *bere* is Thomas of Lancaster, and the *folk* of l. 125 are Sir Andrew Harcla, Sir Simon Ward, and their forces.

134. *Henueres*, a substitution for the 'aliens' of the other versions. The reference is here to an incident which would be well remembered in Lincolnshire. In his first Scotch expedition Edward had the help of John of Hainaut and many of his countrymen. At York, their servants fell out with some English archers over a game of dice. In the fight several of the former were killed. Their masters in turn killed three hundred and sixteen of the English archers, all men of the Bishop of Lincoln. Le Bel took part in the affair (i. pp. 39-44). Perhaps the translator of this piece was a Lincolnshire man; the Harleian MS. containing the French version appears to have belonged to Hugh Obthorp of Baston, co. Lincoln, in the fourteenth century, and subsequently to John Warner, chaplain of Sutton in the same county. (Ward, p. 309.)

138, 9. The *Aren* is Gaveston. He bore vert, six eagles displayed or. (Doyle, *Official Baronage*, i. p. 438.) He was created Earl of Cornwall in 1307.

140. *Knaresmire*, for *Knavesmire*, a common pasturage outside York, which was close to the York Tyburn, and came in time to be the name for the place of execution there. (Davies, *Walks through York*, p. 101; Drake, *Eboracum*, p. 398.) It is here used simply for a place of execution. Gaveston was beheaded on Blacklow Hill, June 19th, 1312.

143. *lyon*: throughout the passage he is a boar. The 'lyon' is due to the French, 'Après cel chevre vendra un sengler qe avera la teste sen & quoer de leon,' H.

146. 'Son visage *serra* repos as malades,' H.

152. To *chistise*, in punishing. The misdoers are Mortimer and his friends.

163. *iornay*, 'ceo qil avera a faire,' H.

189. *ass*, the 'asinus nequitiae' of the Vaticinium.

192. Perhaps *harder* is a play on his name; comp. 'Et per Richard, *riche hard* congrue notatur,' Wright, Pol. Songs, p. 49.

196. 'Si foundra une Cite qi *serra* crie par tot le mound,' Julius. The other copies seem imperfect; the reference is obscure, perhaps the occupation of Cherbourg by the English is meant (Froissart, ix. p. 70).

202. The *Arne* is Gloucester: in contemporary poems he is generally a Swan, no doubt from his badge the swan azure. His brother of l. 208 is John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, who is not generally credited with any share in his murder. But by virtue of his office as Seneschal of England he would pronounce sentence against Gloucester (Parl. Rolls, iii. p. 378) who was murdered at Calais in 1397.

213. The *moldwerp* is Henry the Fourth, the *dragon* of l. 231, Percy, and the *wolf* of the west Glyndwr. It may, however, be mentioned that the latter, identifying himself with the dragon of Merlin's prophecy, displayed a banner with a golden dragon on a white ground. (Wylie, Henry the Fourth, i. p. 247.)

230. 'Cele guerre *serra* funde sur un pierre,' H., which is as enigmatic as the English.

237. The *liown* is perhaps Macmurrugh. But the line is more probably a vague reference to help expected from Ireland by the conspirators. In 1401 Glyndwr had sent letters to the Irish chiefs asking help. Merlin, he said, had foretold that the Irish would join the Welsh and the Scotch against Henry the Fourth. (Wylie, Henry the Fourth, i. p. 249.)

249. *the water*, 'Saverne,' H., i. e. the Severn. In the Vaticinium it is said that the Thames would be turned into blood in the time of the *ass* of wickedness; so also the portent of l. 266.

260. *yle*, 'nef,' H., J. Perhaps the writer was here thinking of the story that Richard the Second had escaped to the Out Isles (Wyntoun, ix. 2015-54).

278. The ending of H. is the same as this; J. adds 'si Dieu ne meite amendement de sa grace.'

III.

Letre Dauyd le Bruys.

This poem is clearly of English origin; it has the characteristic English mistakes. The writer of the Whalley MS. was certainly not the author of it; he has written it continuously like prose, and the rhymes have suffered in ll. 9, 10, 39, 40. The flourish which indicates a final *e* in trope, l. 14, riene, l. 17, passere, l. 19, destourbere, l. 20, estere, l. 26, aidere, l. 46, remountere, l. 56, messager, l. 71, encountrere, l. 72, makes impossible forms of these words. There are other indications that the scribe did not fully understand what he was copying. The spelling Bruys (= Bruz) in l. 1 is noteworthy.

4. auoms. Read *auex*, the reference being to the French losses at Crécy.

9. refuse, if right, must mean 'cast away' (L. * *refusare*).

10. su for *sui* (L. *sum*).

21. Lerceuesqe : see ix. 29, note.

23. Percy, 'alter Judas Machabaeus filius Matathiae, bonus praeliator,' and Mowbray are specially mentioned in the Lanercost Chronicle, pp. 350, 351.

27. *nouvelle croyce*, perhaps a folk etymology for *Neuille Cross*.

40. *Chanoignes* for *berchers* would restore the rhyme.

63. *fausyne*, deceit (L. *falsus*).

IV.

Tractatus Belli apud Crucem.

The account in the Lanercost Chronicle shows a remarkable resemblance to this poem. The Chronicle was probably written by the Minorites at Carlisle.

19. See p. 87. The Peel of Liddell was situated on the border about two miles north from Netherby.

22. *forceiunculum*, diminutive of *fortia*, is not in Ducange. *Fortalium* is the word in the Lanercost Chronicle.

31. *Achitofel* was, as the interlineation explains, Malcolm Flemyng, created Earl of Wigton in 1342. He was a devoted adherent of David the Second. See for an account of him Rot. Scacc. Scot., i. pp. clviii and clxvii.

33. Comp. 'Than consalyd Willame off Dowglas, | That off weris mast wys than was, | To turne agayne in thaire cuntre : | He sayd, that wyth thair honeste | Thai mycht agayne repayre rycht welle, | Syne

thai off fors hade tane that Pelle. | Bot othir lordis that war by, | Sayd
he had fillyd fullyly | His baggis, and thairris all twme war,' Wyntoun,
viii. 6149-57.

47. *grangias*, farm houses, properly barns for storing grain.

49. This line is identical with one in a poem on the Scottish Wars of
Edw. I in Wright, *Pol. Songs*, p. 165. Comp. 'Sic illud tunc authen-
ticum exstitit impletum, "Vox in Rama audita est, et noluit consolari,"'
Chronicon de Lanercost, p. 347.

61. The rhymes in 149-150, 165-166 show that *Scoti* not *Scotti* is
the true form.

68. Bishop Auckland lies about ten miles south-west of Durham, and
Kirk Merrington (l. 74) is three miles east of Bishop Auckland.

69. *rex*, Edward Baliol. It is doubtful whether he was present.

101. The true form is *Davit*; see ll. 153-154, 189-190.

134. Comp. 'Duo Nigri monachi venerunt de Dunelmia ad tractan-
dum cum David pro treugis habendis. "Ecce," inquit David, "isti
falsi monachi per suas insidias mecum colloquentes; hac enim de causa
tenebant in conclavi, ut taliter defraudatos irrueret subito super nos
exercitus Anglicanus." Praecepit ergo eos capi et statim decapitari, sed
omnes Scotti tunc temporis sic erant occupati quod monachi clam fugien-
tes laeti et illaesi, sine aliquo damno ad propria repedabant,' *Chronicon
de Lanercost*, p. 349.

155. Sir Robert Bertram of Bothal in Northumberland, was sheriff of
that county in 1343, 4. He captured both Douglas and Flemyng in the
battle, but being ordered by special writ to convey the latter to the
Tower he let him escape. The King thereupon issued an order to seize
Bertram and his goods. He was, however, pardoned in the following
year. He died in 1363. See Hodgson's *Northumberland*, Pt. ii. vol.
ii. p. 126.

167. Gilbert de Umfreville, third Earl of Angus, had already done
good service on the English side in the Scottish wars. He was one of
the leaders of the first division at Neville's Cross. He died in 1381.
Hodgson's Northumberland, Pt. ii. vol. i. p. 34-43.

175. This jest is also worked out in the *Lanercost Chronicle*. Leland
copied 'ex tabula pencilibus Dunelmensis' (pensili Dunelmensi) the
following, 'Gul. de la Zuche *archiepiscopus* Ebor. and Mowbray *ejus
diaconus ac Robertus Ogle ejus subdiaconus fortiter pugnabant*,'
Itinerary, viii. p. 40.

178. Sir Robert de Ogle of Castle Ogle on the Blyth, to which place
the captive king was brought. *Hodgson*, Pt. ii. vol. i. p. 381.

185. John Randolph, third Earl of Moray, younger son of Randolph
the Regent. *Douglas, Peerage of Scotland*, p. 499.

189. Sir Thomas of Charteris (de Carnoto) was created Chancellor on

David's return from France. There is an account of him in Rot. Scacc. Scot., i. p. lxxv note.

197. Robert Stewart succeeded David Bruce as Robert the Second in 1371.

211. Leland in the place quoted above noted down, 'Thomas Carre *vexillarius dixit Joanni Copland, cape Davidem regem.*' For Coupland, see p. 90. In another poem on the battle he is described 'A re nomen habens, cui cognomen cape terram.' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. 46.

212. As the interlineation indicates, this should read, 'seruus eius fui.'

225. Wath, woe be to.

233. This cause of dissension between the two kings is not dwelt on elsewhere.

GLOSSARY

This Glossary is also a fairly complete index for all words in Minot's poems except those of very common occurrence. The abbreviations are: *v.* infinitive mood of verb; *pr. s.*, *pt. s.*, *pr. pl.*, *pt. pl.*, third person singular or plural, present or past indicative; *imp. s.*, *imp. pl.*, second person singular or plural imperative. The other persons are indicated by numbers prefixed. A noun in the singular is indicated by *s.*, in the plural by *pl.* No indication or meaning follows a word which is merely a variant form of the word preceding.

The other contractions are the usual ones. Forms marked with an asterisk are theoretical.

A.

Abate, *v.* beat down, lessen, lower, viii. 19. abated, *pt. s.* vii. 44; *pp.* iv. 64, v. 51. OF. *abatre*. LL. *abbattuere*.

Abide, *imp. s.* remain, ii. 22. **abyde**, *v.* stop, vii. 42. **habide**, await, i. 23, vii. 106, viii. 31; hold the field, xi. 35. **habyde**, xi. 34.

Adreinte, *pp.* drowned, A i. 12. ME. *adrenchen*. OE. *ādrenčan*.

Affiance, *s.* trust, vii. 162. OF. *aſiance*. LL. *adfidencia*.

Aghe, *s.* dread, that which produces fear, A ii. 48. OWScand. *agr*.

A-goo, *pp.* past by, A i. 18. OE. *āgān*.

Ailed, *pp.* afflicted, pained, ix. 27. OE. *eglan*, to give pain.

Aire, *s.* heir, iv. 28.

Al, *adj.* all, i. 16. **all**, i. 18.

Alblast, *s.* a cross-bow from which quarrels were shot, iv. 82. OF. *arbaleste*. L. *arcubalista*.

Ald, *pl.* old people, iii. 19.

Alder, *gen. pl. adj.* of all, A ii. 81. OE. *ealra*, *gen. pl.* of *eall*.

All, *adv.* quite, altogether, i. 37,

39, x. 30. **All-if**, *conj.* even though, i. 85.

Allane, *adj.* alone, ix. 65.

Als, *conj.* as, i. 5, &c.; *adv.* also, i. 51, &c. **alls**, also, i. 60. also, iii. 51.

Alway, *adv.* ever, vii. 62.

Alweldand, *adj.* all-ruling, vii. 26.

Ande, *s.* breath, A ii. 50, 87. OWScand. *andz*, breath; OE. *anda*, hate.

Ane, one, iii. 94. **a**, ix. 53.

Ankers, *pl.* anchors, x. 14. OE. *ancor*. L. *ancora*.

Are, *adv.* formerly, before, vii. 128, ix. 58, A ii. 178. OE. *ær*.

Are, *s.* mercy, possibly the right explanation in viii. 62. OE. *ār*.

Aren, *s.* eagle, A ii. 138. **arne**, A ii. 202. OE. *earn*.

Armure, *s.* armour, mail, vii. 155. OF. *armeüre*, *armure*. L. *armātūra*. The termination is the same as in *vesteüre*, from *vestitura*.

Arne, see **Aren**.

Ascry, *s.* report of scouts who have discovered the enemy, iv. 40. See Skelton, ii. 152. OF. *escrier*. Anglo-F. **ascrier*, from L. *exquirītare*.

Assoyl, *v.* absolve, grant pardon, ix. 30; *pr. s. subj.* iii. 115, vii. 33. **assoyle**, *v.* 88. OF. *as-soldre*. L. *absōlūere*.

At, *prep.* to, with gerundial infinitive, i. 21, v. 58, ix. 17. **at**, on, vi. 22.

Availe, *v.* profit, help, iii. 46.

Avance, *v.* advance, promote the cause of, ix. 5. **avaunce**, i. 70. OF. *avancier*. L. **abantiare*.

Ax, *s.* axe, vii. 84.

Ay, *adv.* always, i. 63, iii. 124. **ay whils**, *conj.* although, i. 28.

B.

Bachilere, *s.* knight (strictly, one who is not yet a banneret), v. 48. OF. *bachelor*. LL. **baccalārem*.

Bad, see **Bid**.

Bade, see **Bede**.

Baken, *pp.* baked, ix. 51. The strong form is still in use in Northern dialects.

Balde, see **Bold**.

Baldely, *adv.* bravely, v. 55. **baldly**, iii. 96, vii. 83.

Bale, *s.* woe, mischief, i. 4, ii. 28, 29, vi. 62, vii. 16, viii. 20, x. 22.

Ban, *v.* curse, viii. 94. OE. *ban-nan*.

Band, *s.* bonds, vi. 47. **bandes**, *pl.* v. 73.

Baner, *s.* banner, flag, i. 61, ii. 8. OF. *banere*. L. **bandāria*.

Bankes, *pl.* banks, slopes, vii. 21, viii. 20.

Bare, *s.* boar, vi. 53, &c. **bore**, vi. 3, vii. 21, xi. 34. **bere**, A ii. 117.

Bare, *adj.* stripped, ruined, ii. 20, vii. 123, x. 26; on bankes bare, in open country unfortified by natural difficulties (comp. iv. 61 note), vii. 21, viii. 20; bare of, deprived of, vi. 24, 25.

Bare, *pt. pl.* bore, iii. 124.

Barely, *adv.* utterly, or perhaps, openly, clearly, viii. 94.

Bargan, *s.* bargain, purchase, vii. 64. OF. *bargaine*, as if from L. **barcāneum*, derivative of L. *barca*.

Barounes, *pl.* barons, iii. 43. **barons**, v. 26. LL. *barōnem*.

Batail, *s.* army, vii. 22, viii. 52; battle, vii. 83. **bataile**, i. T. 2, v. 83, xi. 35. **bataill**, viii. 31. **bataille**, army, ix. 8. **batayl**, v. 40, ii. T. 2. **batayle**, iv. 78. OF. *bataile*. LL. *battuālia*. **batale**, *v.* to fight, iv. 33.

Be, *v.* be, i. 43; *pr. s. subj.* vii. 113. **bene**, *pp.* iv. 13. **ert**, 2. *pr. s.* art, i. 4. **ertou**, art thou, vii. 124, 125. **es**, *pr. s.* i. 17; *pr. pl.* i. 55, v. 36 (?). **er**, 2 *pr. pl.* ii. 6, vi. 11. **er**, *pr. pl.* i. 39. **are**, viii. 62 (?). **was**, *pt. s.* i. 59. 2 *pt. s.* vii. 133. **war**, *pt. pl.* i. 13, 28, 30, 40; **was**, i. 47, v. 30. **were**, iv. 39. **ware**, iv. 87, viii. 93. **war**, *pt. s. subj.* ii. 32, v. 5; *pt. pl. subj.* i. 48.

Bede, *v.* offer, ii. 9, xi. 35, A ii. 233; mixed in meaning with *bide*, v. 40. **bade**, *pt. pl.* offered, v. 55. OE. *bēodan*.

Bedene, see **Bidene**.

Bekes, *pl.* becks, brooks, A ii. 53. OWS cand. *bekkr*.

Beld, *s.* protection, help, vii. 27. OE. *bieldo*. Goth. *balpei*, boldness.

Bende, *v.* bend, vi. 23. **bent**, *pp.* vii. 84, 85.

Berd, *s.* beard, iv. 30, x. 19. **berde**, iv. 96.

Bere, *s.* bier, vi. 48, 49.

Bere, see **Bare**.

Berebag, *s.* bag bearer, ii. 20, ix. 23. See note on ii. 20.

Bestes, *pl.* beasts, i. 6.

Besy, *adj.* zealous, eager, i. 30.

Bet, *adv.* better, iii. 40 (conjecture).

- Betes, *pr. s.* frequents, in phrase betes þe stretes, ii. 25. betin, *pp.* beaten, ii. 8.
- Betes, *pr. pl.* relieve, remedy, ii. 28, 29. OE. *bētan*, to remedy. L. Scotch *beit*.
- Bi, *prep.* during, vii. 171; in accordance with, viii. 40, 63.
- Biche, *s.* bitch, viii. 78.
- Bid, 1 *pr. s.* pray, i. 3. bad, *pt. s.* ordered, iv. 34, vi. 63.
- Bide, *v.* remain, iv. 65, &c.
- Bidene, *adv.* together, in combination with *all*, iii. 77, viii. 11; with *ilkone*, viii. 74. *bedene*, A ii. 65. *bydene*, iv. 53. Always in rhyme and without much meaning. Zupitza, Guy of Warwick, explains it = *mid ene*, with once, meaning, like *at once*, (1) at the same time, (2) without delay. The difficulty of this derivation lies in *mid* = *bid*. See NED. under *bedene*.
- Bifall, *v.* befall, iii. 26.
- Bifor, *prep.* before, vii. 22, 49, 168, &c. *bifore*, *adv.* formerly, i. 40, 90, iv. 14, x. 18. *biforn* (in rhyme), *adv.* iii. 110, A ii. 159. *byfor*, *prep.* v. 27.
- Big, *adj.* strong, doughty, vii. 83. Comp. Norw. dialectic *bugge* (Björkman, 157).
- Big, *v.* to build, viii. 26. *bigges*, *pr. s.* viii. 24. *bigged*, *pp.* vii. 168. OWScand. *byggia*, to inhabit.
- Bigile, *v.* beguile, viii. 44.
- Begin, *v.* begin, iv. 78, vii. 13, 20, 30, &c. *bigyn*, ix. 29. *bigins*, *pr. s.* viii. 25. *bigon*, *pt. s.* ix. 49. *bygun*, *pp.* vii. 149.
- Biging, *s.* house, dwelling, ii. 20, vii. 123. *biginges*, *pl.* vi. 35.
- Bihalding, *s.* looks, countenance, A ii. 145.
- Biker, *v.* fight, v. 55, xi. 34.
- Bileuid, *pt. s.* remained, iii. 66; *pt. pl.* vii. 101. Represents OE. *belæfan*, to leave behind, but with meaning of OE. *belīfan*, to remain. In *Lazamon*, *bilæuen* has both meanings.
- Biside, *prep.* beside, near, vii. 102, viii. 25, 28.
- Bisschoppes, *pl.* bishops, iii. 17, vii. 137.
- Bithoght, *pt. pl.* purposed, iii. 47; *pp.* es bithoght, is minded, vi. 55; *suld* be bithoght, should have weighed the matter, vii. 111. OE. *beþencan*.
- Bitid, *pp.* happened, i. 73. *bityde*, *pr. s. subj.* befall, ii. 12. Comp. OE. *getīdan*.
- Bitwixen, *prep.* between, vii. 134.
- Bityde, *see* Bitid.
- Bi tyme, *adv.* in good time, soon, viii. 27.
- Blac, *adj.* black, x. 19.
- Blan, *see* Blin.
- Blaw, *v.* blow, iv. 80.
- Blede, *v.* bleed, vii. 52, 53.
- Blin, *v.* cease, v. 86, vi. 72, ix. 31; 2. *pr. subj.* x. 19. *blinned*, *pt. s.* v. 87. *blan*, vii. T. 2. OE. *blinnan*.
- Blis, *s.* place of bliss, iii. 114; pleasure, joy, vi. 24, 25, vii. 167, viii. 19.
- Blis, *pr. s. subj.* bless, iii. 126. OE. *blissian*, to rejoice, but with meaning of *bledsian*.
- Blith, *adj.* merry, vii. 128; rejoiced, viii. 49.
- Boght, *pp.* in dere boght, dearly atoned for, i. 43, iii. 119; *pt. pl.* vii. 64. For *abought*, OE. *abyrgan*, to pay for.
- Bokes, *pl.* books, vii. 3, 6.
- Bold, *adj.* daring, v. 40, 54. *bolde*, iv. 68, 76, vii. 53, 85. *balde*, xi. 13.
- Bone, *s.* prayer, i. 3, iv. 46. OWScand. *bón*.
- Bore, *see* Bare.

Born, *pp.* borne, i. 61.
 Bost, *s.* boast, brag, iv. 66, v. 50, 51, vi. 26. boste, i. 18, 62, ii. 8, 20, v. 86, 87, viii. 85.
 Bosting, *s.* boasting, bragging, ii. 9.
 Bot, *conj.* i. 47, ii. 36, &c.; *prep.* except, ii. 18; *adv.* only, viii. 45.
 Bote, *s.* remedy, benefit, iv. 58, vi. 26. bute, i. 4, v. 6. OE. *bōt*.
 Bote, *s.* boat, xi. 20. botes, *pl.* iii. 82.
 Boun, *adj.* ready, prepared, xi. 34. boune, i. 63, ii. 9. OWScand. *búinn*, *pp.* of *búa*, to make ready.
 Boure, *s.* bower, room, viii. 26. OE. *būr*.
 Bowes, *pl.* bows, v. 54, vi. 23, vii. 84, 85.
 Brade, *adj.* broad, v. 54, vii. 84.
 Brandes, *pl.* brands, vii. 70.
 Brede, *s.* bread, ix. 51.
 Breke, *v.* break, vi. 36. brak, *pt. pl.* vii. 78.
 Bren, *v.* burn, vii. 89. brene, *v.* vi. 35. brin, *v.* iii. 55, v. 10. brend, *pt. pl.* burned, iii. 61.
 Brenis, *pl.* shirts of ring mail, vi. 3. OWScand. *brynja*. Goth. *brunǰ*.
 Brere, *s.* briar, bush, vii. 128. OE. *brēr*.
 Brest, *s.* breast, vii. 22.
 Brid, *s.* woman, wife, i. 79. OE. *brȳd*. Goth. *bráþs*.
 Brides, *s.* bird, vii. 128. briddes, *pl.* i. 6 (conjecture). OE. *brid*.
 Brig, *s.* bridge, vii. 78. OE. *brycg*.
 Brim, *s.* sea, flood, v. 57. OE. *brim*.
 Brin, see Bren.
 Broght, *pt. s.* brought, iv. 37, viii. 52, &c.; *pt. pl.* ii. 36; *pp.* iv. 66.
 Brwed, *pt. s.* brewed, contrived, vi. 62.

Bud, *pt. s.* behoved (used impersonally), v. 52, ix. 28. Contracted from *bihofed* or *bihoved*. OE. *behōfian*.
 Bukler, *s.* shield. to play at buckler, to fence with broad sword and buckler, v. 34.
 Burgase, *pl.* (but same form as singular) burgesses, townsmen, viii. 65. buriase, *pl.* v. 15. L. *burgensis*.
 Burne, *s.* man, v. 40 (conjecture). Busk, *imp. s.* hasten, ii. 22. OWScand. *búask*, to prepare oneself, reflexive of *búa*, to prepare.
 Bute, see Bote.
 Bydene, see Bidene.
 Byfor, see Bifor.
 Bygun, see Bigin.

C.

Caitefes, *pl.* wretches, i. 75. kaitefs, v. 58. OF. *cailif*, *cheitif* from L. **cactivum*.
 Cant, *adj.* bold, brisk, eager, vii. 107. Comp. Du. *kant*, edge.
 Cantly, *adv.* keenly, eagerly, v. 64.
 Cardinales, *pl.* cardinals, viii. 40.
 Care, *s.* anxiety, i. 11, v. 7, &c.; affliction, distress, ii. 10, 19, &c. cares, *pl.* iv. 67.
 Cast, *pp.* thrown, v. 7. kast, ix. 60. casten, v. 57. OWScand. *kasta*.
 Castell, see Kastell.
 Catalle, *s.* goods, chattels, ix. 26. catell, vii. 124, 126. Anglo-F. *cateil*. LL. *capitale*.
 Chance, *s.* fortune, hap, i. 72. Chaunce, i. 73.
 Chere, *s.* looks, mien, iv. 45. OF. *chiere* from L. *caram*. Gk. *kápa*, head.
 Childé, *s.* child, iii. 56.
 Clene, *adv.* completely, viii. 77.
 Clere, *adj.* bright, unclouded, iv. 48.

Clerk, *s.* scholar, vii. 2. *clerkes*, vii. 4, ix. 14.
 Clip, *v.* embrace, clasp, vi. 29. OE. *clýppan*.
 Colde, *adj.* in cares colde, chilling, disheartening, iv. 67, vii. 87.
 Come, Comen, see Cum.
 Comun, *adj.* common, viii. 67.
 Confort, *s.* comfort, strengthening, i. 83, iv. 47; *v.* to cheer, iv. 18, v. 79.
 Conig, *s.* rabbit, viii. 75. Comp. LL. *cuniculus*.
 Coste, *s.* coast, country, vii. 38, x. 22.
 Counsail, *s.* counsel, advice, vii. 112, viii. 43. *counsaille*, iii. 45.
 Couaitise, *s.* greed, ix. 26. OF. *coveitise*. LL. *cupiditia*. In F. *convoitise* the *n* is not original.
 Craft, *s.* trade, business, v. 69.
 Crak, *v.* crack, ii. 10. *crakked*, *pp.* i. 59, ii. 11.
 Crede, *s.* creed, in phrase, *ken one one's crede*, to teach an elementary lesson to one, viii. 4, ix. 38, xi. 14.
 Cri, *pr. pl.* with *on*, appeal to, i. 69.
 Cros, *s.* cross, ix. 28, 64.
 Crowne, *s.* top of the head, head, i. 59, ii. 10. *croune*, ii. 11. *croune*, *s.* crown, vii. 170. *coroun*, ix. 46.
 Cum, *v.* come, iv. 42, vii. 9; *pr. pl.* viii. 91; 2 *s. subj. pr.* x. 22. *cumes*, *pr. s.* vi. 50; *pr. pl.* vi. 43. *come*, *pt. s.* iii. T. 1, 86, 107, &c.; *pt. pl.* iii. 21, 60, v. 27, &c. *comen*, *pp.* v. 64. *cumen*, iii. 11, iv. 29, &c.
 Cumand, *pt. s.* commanded, iii. 53.
 Cumandment, *s.* orders, iii. 50.
 Cumberd, *pp.* burdened, imperilled, vii. 120. OF. *combrer*, LL. *combrus* (= *cumulus*), an abbatis, that is, felled timber used as a fortification. LL. *combra* means a weir.

Cumen, see Cum.

Cumly, *adj.* comely, iv. 1, 3.

Kumly, vii. 95.

Cumpany, *s.* company, train, iv. 21. L. **compania*.

Cuntre, *s.* country, iv. 28.

Custom, *s.* tribute, tax, x. 25.

D.

Dais, *pl.* days, vii. 171. *dayes*, iv. 32.

Dale, *s.* world below, i. 8, 9; earth, grave, x. 3.

Dance, *s.* vii. 58, viii. 72. *daunce*, i. 66, &c.; *v.* ix. 3. *daunced*, *pt. pl.* v. 29.

Dar, *pr. s.* dare, viii. 31, xi. 34, 35. *durst*, *pt. pl.* i. 23.

Dare, 1 *pr. s.* to be dismayed, to lie motionless as if mased, i. 9. *dareand*, *pres. p.* i. 39. Comp. Low German *bedaren* (Franck).

Dayes, see Dais.

Ded, *adj.* dead, x. 3.

Ded, *s.* deed, act, viii. 15. *dede*, i. 23, 52, &c. *dedes*, *pl.* i. 8, 10.

Ded, *s.* death, A ii. 267. *dede*, vi. 68. *dedes*, *gen. s.* of death, i. 26.

Defendes, *pr. s.* defends, iii. 7.

Dele, *s.* portion, deal, iii. 38.

Delid, *pt. pl.* dealt, distributed, vii. 141. *delt*, *pt. s.* vii. 98.

Depe, *s.* sea, x. 24.

Dere, *v.* to injure, i. 52, viii. 10, A ii. 55. OE. *derian*. OHG. *terjan*.

Dere, *s.* injury, i. 10.

Dere, *adv.* dearly, i. 43, iii. 119, vii. 64.

Dere, *adj.* dear, vii. 126.

Dern, *adj.* secret, i. 10. OE. *dierne*.

Derue, *adj.* terrible, bold, i. 10 (conjecture).

Despite, *s.* scorn, mockery, insult, vii. 122. OF. *despit*. L. **dēs-pectum*.

Dight, *pp.* appointed, i. 80, vi. 7; prepared, ready, v. 25, 41, vii. 93, viii. 34, xi. 22. dightes, *pr. s.* prepares, vii. 36. OE. *dihtan*, L. *dictare*.

Dik, *s.* bank, ridge, A ii. 102.

Din, *s.* noise, v. 84.

Diner, *s.* dinner, xi. 22. OF. infinitive, *disner*. L. **dīsjūnare*.

Dint, *s.* stroke, i. 26, vii. 141. dintes, *pl.* vi. 34.

Distauce, *s.* distance, ix. 1.

Do, *v.* cause, x. 24. dose, *pr. s.* viii. 21; *pr. pl.* i. 10 (conjecture). did, *pt. pl.* v. 45, 56. done, *pt. pl.* i. 10. done, *pp.* at an end, i. 66, ii. 24. done, v. A ii. 26.

Doghty, *adj.* doughty, brave, iii. 92, iv. 53, 77. dughty, ix. 39. OE. *dohtig*.

Dole, *s.* grief, sorrow, i. 80, viii. 10, A ii. 98.

Dole, *s.* share, portion, what is dealt out, vii. 140.

Domes day, *s.* day of judgement, vi. 7.

Domp, *v.* plunge, sink, x. 24. OWScand. *dumpa*. Dan. *dumpe*.

Done, see Do.

Dongen, *pp.* hurled, thrown, vii. 74. Scotch *ding*. Comp. OSwed. *diunga*.

Dose, see Do.

Doun, *adv.* down, vii. 74, 159. doune, i. 61, ii. 8, iv. 66.

Dout, *s.* fear, doubt, i. 26, ii. 14, iv. 88, ix. 63, A ii. 168.

Dowt, *v.* to stand in fear, vi. 34. douted, *pt. pl.* i. 86.

Dray, *s.* tumult, viii. 34. Usually *deray*. OF. *desrei*, disorder, confusion. L. *dis*řádum*, order (Foerster).

Dred, *s.* dread, xi. 17. Drede, i. 39, ix. 36, xi. 16, 36.

Dresce, *imp. s.* guide, direct, i. 8. OF. *drescer*, *drezier*. L. **directiare*, from *directus*.

Drewris, *pl.* delights, things of price, vii. 126. OF. *druerie* as if from L. **druaria*. It. *druderie*. OHG. *drūt* (Otfrit), *trūt*.

Drue, *v.* dash on, rush, v. 41.

Droupe, 1 *pr. s.* to hang down the head, to be dispirited, i. 9. OWScand. *drúpa*. See note.

Dubbed, *pp.* created knights, vii. 58.

Duc, *s.* duke, iv. 22, v. 41. duke, iii. 25.

Duche, *adj.* German, iii. 20.

Dughty, see Doghty.

Dwell, *v.* remain, v. 21; abide, i. 80, xi. 23; remain dead on the field, ix. 8; await battle, iv. 56. dwelled, *pt. s.* remained, i. 81, vii. 37.

Dy, *v.* die, iv. 24. dye, x. 24.

E.

Eb, *s.* ebb, v. 33.

Efter, *prep.* for, in search of, xi. 33; *adv.* iii. 49; *adj.* following, v. 31.

Eghen, *pl.* eyes, vii. 92. ine, vii. 79. OE. *ēagan*, pl. of *ēage*.

Els, *adv.* else, vii. 115.

End, *s.* district, ix. 3. OE. *ende*.

End, *adj.* for *endur*, former, A ii. 184. OWScand. *ender*.

Engines, *pl.* machines, xi. T. 1. OF. *engin*. L. *ingenium*.

Enmys, *pl.* enemies, i. 46. OF. *enemi*. L. *inimicus*.

Entred, *pp.* entered, vii. 35.

Ere, *s.* ear, iii. 86.

Erle, *s.* earl, i. 42, v. 37, 53. Erles, *pl.* v. 26.

Ersbisschop, *s.* archbishop, ix. 29. OE. *ercebiscop*.

Ertou, see Be.

Espe, *s.* aspen, A ii. 240. OE. *æsp*.

Eth, *adj.* easy, v. 47. OE. *ēaþe*.

Etin, *pp.* eaten, viii. 74, 76, 77.

Euerilka, *adj.* every, xi. 37.
Euermare, *s.* evermore, viii. 64.
 euermore, vii. 154.
Euill, *adv.* ill, x. 27. euil, xi.
 38. euyll, ix. 59.
Euyñ, *adv.* just, even, i. 68.

F.

Faght, *pt. s.* fought, v. 78, viii.
 48; *pt. pl.* iii. 103. foghten,
pp. v. 62. fight, *v.* i. 25.
Faile, *s.* failure, A ii. 61.
Fain, *adj.* glad, pleased, vi. 58.
 faine, xi. 18, 21.
Faire, *adj.* fair, vi. 6, viii. 73, ix.
 6, 40, 46; honourable, vii. 116;
adv. iv. 71, v. 60, 78, ix. 16.
Fall, *v.* befall, happen, v. 78.
 fell, *pt. s.* v. 83.
Fals, *adj.* false, i. 74, v. 23, vii.
 62, &c.
Falshede, *s.* treachery, falseness,
 ix. 61.
Famen, *pl.* foemen, vi. 73, vii. 39.
 fomen, ix. 17.
Fand, see **Findes**.
Fande, *v.* experience, vi. 45.
fonde, ix. 9. OE. *fandian*, to
 try.
Fare, *s.* way of behaving, manners,
 especially assumption of supe-
 riority, brag, i. 24, 25, vi. 20,
 vii. 118, x. 5, xi. 18.
Fare, *v.* go, i. 13, ii. 21, iii. 53,
 iv. 17, &c. ferd, *pt. s.* iv. 19;
pt. pl. v. 13. fare, *v.* speed,
 prosper, ix. 59, xi. 25. fars,
pr. s. iii. 40.
Fast, *adv.* earnestly, i. 69, ii. 27;
 vigorously, iii. 7, 61, 103;
 rapidly, iv. 17, 27.
Fayled, *pt. s.* was a defaulter, did
 not come, ix. 54.
Fede, *v.* feed, x. 4; *pr. pl.* x. 5.
Felaws, *pl.* companions, partners,
 vii. 135. OWScand. *fēlagi*.
Feld, *s.* field, plain, iii. 29; battle-
 field, iv. 56. felde, iv. 49, 74.

Feld, see **Fell**.

Fele, *adj.* many, iii. 17, x. 5.
 OE. *fela*. OHG. *filu*. G. *viel*.
Felhede, *s.* fierceness, savagery,
 A ii. 38.
Felid, *pp.* hid, iv. 71 (conjec-
 ture).
Fell, *adj.* cruel, fierce, i. 74, v. 23,
 vii. 39, viii. 33, ix. 7.
Fell, see **Fall**.
Fell, *v.* lay low, vii. 86. feld,
pp. vii. 164, iv. 71 (?).
Felony, *s.* malice, wickedness, vii.
 40.
Fer, *adv.* far, i. 56, v. 52, &c.
ferr, *comp. adv.* farther, x. 16.
 fer, x. 17. fer, *adj.* iii. 73.
Ferd, see **Fare**.
Fere, *v.* to terrify, vii. 69. ferd,
pp. as *adj.* afraid, iv. 61, viii.
 93; *pp.* as *s.* fear, iv. 93, vii. 90.
 ferde, iv. 27 (always preceded
 by *for*).
Fere, *s.* companion, partner, vi.
 46. OE. *gefēra*.
Ferene, *s.* fern, bracken, iv. 71.
Ferlys, *pl.* wonders, marvels,
 A ii. 2. OE. *adj. færlīc*, sudden.
Fers, *adj.* fierce, viii. 33, ix. 7.
 OF. *fiers*. L. *fērus*.
File, *s.* vile person, coward, vii.
 139, viii. 47.
Fill, *s.* as much as satisfies, v. 62,
 x. 20.
Findes, *pr. s.* finds, ii. 28. fand,
pt. s. found, vii. 39, 49, ix. 20,
 xi. 16, 17; *pt. pl.* iii. 93, xi. 21.
 fun, *pp.* viii. 93. funden, viii.
 47, 50.
Fine, *v.* come to an end, die, x.
 17. fyne, come to terms, or
 perhaps, cease fighting, xi. 21.
Fissches, *pl.* fishes, x. 4, 5.
Flay, *v.* terrify, ix. 17. Comp.
 OWScand. *fleyja*.
Fle, *v.* flee, escape, iii. 70, iv. 60.
 fled, *pt. s.* iv. 27, 93; *pt. pl.* i.
 23. fleand, *pr. p.* vii. 90. fled,
pp. viii. 80.

Flemid, *pp.* exiled, i. 44. OE.
flēman, to put to flight.
Flesch, *s.* flesh, i. 20.
Flit, *v.* remove, get away, x. 17.
 OWScand. *flytja*.
Flode, *s.* sea, iii. 83, 121, v. 46.
flude, iii. 76, v. 78.
Floure (de lice), *s.* fleur-de-lis,
 lily flower, iv. 25. *flowre*, iv.
 91. *flowres*, *pl.* ix. 6. *floures*,
 ix. 7.
Flude, see **Flode**.
Flye, *s.* fly, i. 24.
Flye, *v.* fly, vii. 70.
Fode, *s.* person, vi. 71. OE.
fōda, food.
Foghten, see **Faght**.
Fold, *s.* earth, land, viii. 18. OE.
folde.
Fomen, see **Famen**.
Fonde, see **Fande**.
Fone, *adj.* few, ii. 28, v. 45. *fune*,
 ii. 29.
For, *prep.* in spite of, iii. 26, vi.
 20, xi. 18; on account of, iii.
 54, vii. 23. *for to*, with infin.
 of purpose, i. 22, iii. 24, iv. 72,
 84, &c.
Forbere, *v.* spare, forbear, viii.
 12.
Forgat, *pt. pl.* forgot, vii. 67.
Forgone, *pp.* parted with, ix. 46.
Forlore, *pp.* lost, vii. 59. From
 ME. *forlesen*. OE. *forlēosan*.
Forsaid, *pp.* aforesaid, before
 mentioned, i. 57.
Forsworn, *adj.* i. 21.
Forpi, *adv.* on that account, vii.
 75. *pi*, instrumental case of *se*,
 that.
Forward, *s.* compact, agreement,
 ix. 53, 58, 59. LWS. *foreweard*,
 previous security.
Fote, *dat. pl.* feet, iv. 59, vi.
 30.
Founded, *pt. s.* prepared to go,
 betook himself to, i. 12. OE.
fundian, to hasten, to make for.
Fowles, *pl.* birds, i. 6.

Fra, *prep.* from, i. 44. OWScand.
frá.
Franceis, *s.* Frenchman, vii. 133.
Franche, *adj.* French, i. 13, vii.
 77, 118, xi. 24.
Frankis, *adj.* French, vi. 20.
frankisch, vii. 86.
Fre, *adj.* noble, courteous, iv. 10,
 29, A ii. 96.
Frek, *adj.* eager, keen, i. 13, iv.
 54, 84. Comp. 'Fryke or craske,
 or yn grete helthe,' Prompt.
 Parv. p. 179. OE. *frec*. Goth.
-friks.
Frely, *adj.* noble, courteous, vi.
 71. OE. *frēolic*.
Friend, *s.* friend, vii. 161. *frende*,
 vi. 19. *friendes*, *pl.* ii. 28, vii.
 75.
Friendschip, *s.* friendship, vi. 45,
 vii. 115.
Frere, *s.* friar, vii. 131.
Frith, *s.* forest, wooded country
 (properly, an enclosed hunting-
 ground), iii. 29. OE. *ƿefyrhðe*,
 affected in meaning by, *friþ*,
 peace, protection. Comp. 'the
 foreste wele frythede,' fenced
 in, Awntyrs of Arthure, 7,
 and Catholicon Anglicum,
 p. 143.
Fro, *prep.* from, i. 56, &c.
Ful, *adv.* ii. 31, iii. 61, &c. full,
 iii. 87, v. 76, vii. 162.
Ful, *adj.* full, i. 76, ii. 6, vii. 22,
 40. full, ii. 12.
Fun, **Funden**, see **Findes**.
Fune, see **Fone**.
Furth, *adv.* forth, iv. 19, ix. 25,
 47, x. 7.
Fyne, see **Fine**.

G.

Gaf, see **Gif**.
Gai, *adj.* gay, i. 41. *gay*, i.
 40.
Gaylayes, *pl.* galleys, iii. 60.
galays, iii. 79.

Galay men, *pl.* galley-men, iii. 57, 71, 93, 105, 120. galaies men, iii. 51, 97. galayes men, iii. 78.

Gale, *s.* wrong, mischief, vi. 66 (see note).

Galiotes, *pl.* vessels of the galley type but smaller than galleys, iii. 81.

Gamed, *pt. s.* pleased, iv. 57 (conjecture).

Gan, *pt. s.* began, but used as auxiliary = did, vii. 69, ix. 16; *pt. pl.* i. 22, iii. 113, ix. 64, x. 10. OE. *ginnan*.

Gapin, *pr. pl.* gape, vii. 135.

Gase, *pr. pl.* goes, ii. 25.

Gat, *pt. pl.* got, v. 70. get, *pr. pl.* viii. 3.

Gate, *s.* way, vi. 54, vii. 48, xi. 28. OWScand. *gata*, way.

Gaudes, *pl.* tricks, wiles, i. 87, ii. 18, 30. L. *gaudium*.

Gayned, *pt. s.* availed, benefited, iv. 57. OWScand. *gegna*.

Gayt, *s.* goat, A ii. 39.

Geder, *v.* come together, xi. 3.

Gentill, *adj.* gentle, vii. 142; noble, xi. T. i. 13.

Ger, *v.* make, cause, vii. 42. gert, *pt. s.* iii. 43, vi. 66, vii. 99; *pt. pl.* iv. 80, v. 86, vii. 87, x. 16. gert, *pp.* vii. 52. OWScand. *ger(v)a*.

Gestes, *pl.* guests, xi. 29.

Get, *imp. pl.* be on guard, ii. 36. OWScand. *gæta*.

Gif, *pr. s. subj.* give, v. 39, 81, vii. 29. giff, iv. 90. gaf, *pt. s.* gave, i. 83; *pt. pl.* iv. 85, v. 70. gifen, *pp.* viii. 88.

Giftes, *pl.* gifts, vi. 64.

Gile, *s.* guile, i. 86, ii. 6, 12, vii. 136, &c.

Glade, *v.* cheer, gladden, v. 53.

Gle, *s.* device, shift, 'game,' iii. 69, iv. 57. OE. *glæo*.

Goddos, *gen. s.* God's, iii. 10.

Gode, *adj.* vi. 80, A ii. 19. gude,

i. 83, ii. 14, &c. gode, *s.* property, wealth, iii. 84. gude, iii. 122, v. 70. gudes, *pl.* viii. 11, 14, x. 10.

Grame, *s.* hurt, injury, v. 18. OE. *grama*.

Graunt, *v.* grant, vi. 59. grante, viii. 46; *pr. s. subj.* iii. 4, 8, vi. 80.

Graythest, *adj.* directest, vii. 48. Superlative of *graiþ*, exact, direct. OWScand. *greiðr*.

Grene, *s.* common, battle-field, vi. 4, vii. 102, xi. 3. grene, *s.* green-coloured cloth, x. 12.

Grete, *adj.* great, i. 6, 11, iii. 21, &c.; *pl.* great men, v. 80.

Grete, *imp. s.* greet, xi. 28. gretes, xi. 29.

Gude, Gudes, see Gode.

Gudely, *adv.* kindly, v. 80, 81.

Gyn, *s.* device, vii. 150. OF. *engin*. L. *ingenium*.

H.

Habide, Habyde, see Abide.

Hald, *v.* hold, iii. 24; *pr. s. subj.* xi. 10. haldes, *pr. s.* vi. 51. held, *pt. s.* iv. 36, vii. 171; *pt. pl.* iii. 32.

Halely, *adv.* completely, iv. 92.

Haly, *adj.* holy, i. 78, iii. 126. Haly Gaste, Holy Spirit, iv. 8, vii. 28, 29.

Hame, *adv.* home, iv. 89. home, *s.* ix. 18.

Hand, *s.* hand, i. 21, iii. 126, vi. 43. handes, *pl.* iii. 57, v. 72. hend, *pl.* iii. 32.

Harmes, *pl.* injuries, ii. 26, vi. 15, 43.

Hasted, *pt. s.* hastened, iv. 60, v. 22.

Hastily, *adv.* speedily, vii. 66. hastily, vi. 44.

Hat, *pr. s.* is called, iv. 74. hight, *pt. s.* was called, vii. 2. The latter answers to OE. *heht*, past

- of *hātan*, to call, the former represents a passive form of *hātan*. See Zupitza, Guy of Warwick, ii. p. 348. *hetes*, *pr. s.* promises, ii. 26, vi. 51, a pres. with the vowel of the past.
- Hattes, *pl.* hats, viii. 41.
- Haue, *v.* have, i. 29; *pr. pl.* i. 38. has, *pr. s.* ii. 4. haues, ix. 46, xi. 36; 2 *pr. pl.* ix. 60. had, *pt. s.* i. 11; *pt. pl.* i. 26. haued, *pt. s.* ix. 36, 40, xi. 16; *pt. pl.* ix. 63.
- Hele, *v.* hide, vi. 16. helis, *imp. pl.* vi. 17. OE. *helan*. L. *celare*.
- Hele, *s.* health, well-being, xi. 10, A ii. 156. OE. *hæl*.
- Helmis, *pl.* helmets, vii. 105.
- Help, *v.* i. 22; 2. *s. imp.* i. 92; *pr. s. subj.* i. 31. helpid, *pt. s.* helped, availed, v. 35, 37, vii. 100.
- Hend, see Hand.
- Hende, *adv.* quickly, vi. 17 (see note); *adj.* gracious, vii. 34. hinde, dexterous, ix. 37.
- Hent, *pt. pl.* seized, ix. 24; *pp.* received, vi. 15. OE. *hentan*.
- Hepe, *s.* heap, v. 46.
- Here, *v.* hear, iii. 50, vi. 44; 1 *pr. s.* i. 65. heres, *imp. pl.* vii. 169. herd, *pt. s.* iii. 41, iv. 40, 55; *pt. pl.* v. 19, viii. 35.
- Here, *adv.* comp. of *heah*, high, but on here seems to mean simply, on high, x. 14. Perhaps it is *herre*, OE. *heorr*, hinge.
- Hereof, *adv.* of this, v. 19.
- Heried, *pt. s.* harrowed, plundered, vii. 34. OE. *hergian*; Goth. *harjis*, army.
- Herkins, *imp. pl.* listen, vi. T. 1.
- Hernes, *pl.* brains, iii. 68, A ii. 174. *hærnes*, A. S. Chronicle, A. D. 1137. L. *cerebrum*.
- Hert, *s.* heart, i. 11, 21, vi. 52, 69, vii. 127, xi. 17. hertes, *pl.* iii. 78, v. 30.
- Heuidles, *adj.* headless, iii. 100.
- Heuyd, *s.* head, iii. 65, vii. 59. heuiddes, *pl.* iv. 72.
- Heuyn, *s.* heaven, i. 35. heuin, xi. 40.
- Hide, *v.* hide, i. 21, vi. 16. hides, *imp. pl.* vi. 17. hid, *pp.* killed (?), i. 77. hided, *pt. pl.* x. 11.
- Hied, see Hye.
- Hight, see Hat.
- Hight, *s.* high, A ii. 236.
- Hire, *s.* reward, pay, iii. 100, vii. 66, viii. 66. hure, A i. 50.
- Holl, *s.* hold of ship, x. 10, 11. OE. *hol*.
- Honowre, *s.* honour, iii. 21, iv. 92, ix. 42.
- Hors, *s.* horse, iv. 59.
- Houed, *pt. pl.* cruised, awaited in readiness, iii. 83, 121. ME. *houen*.
- Hund, *s.* dog, viii. 21. hundes, *pl.* viii. 76.
- Hundereth, hundred, iii. 94. hundreth, iii. 110, v. 71. OWSand. *hundrad*.
- Hurdis, *s.* bulwark, wooden rampart, x. 14 (see note). OF. *hourdeis*. Gothic *haurds*.
- Hure, see Hire.
- Hye, *v.* hie, hasten, i. 22. hied, *pt. s.* iv. 89.

I.

- Iapes, *pl.* tricks, iv. 15. OF. *japer*, to bark.
- Ilk, *adj.* each, iii. 89, vii. 81. OE. *ēlc*.
- Ilka, *adj.* every, i. 19, vi. 12. Shortened from *ilkan*.
- Ilkone, *pron.* every one, viii. 74. OE. *ēlc* and *æn*.
- Ill, *adv.* ii. 31.
- In, *prep.* on, i. 1.
- Ine, see Eghen.
- Ines, *pl.* dwelling, viii. 27, ix. 52. OE. *inn*, a dwelling. Comp. for plural, 'Syne till his Innys can he ga,' Bruce, xx. 354.

Inglis, *adj.* English, ii. 26, iii. 94, 101, 106, vii. 65, 81. **Ingliss**, iii. 112, vii. 122. **Inglisch**, v. T. 2.
Inogh, *adj.* enough, v. 9, vii. 153.
Iornay, *s.* expedition, iii. 40; business, A ii. 163. OF. *journée*. L. **diurnatam*.
Iwis, *adv.* truly, certainly, iii. 42, &c. Always *I wis* in MS. OE. *gewis*, certain.

K.

Kaies, see **Kayes**.
Kaitefs, see **Caitefes**.
Kast, see **Cast**.
Kastell, *s.* castle, xi. 11, 30. *castell*, xi. 15.
Kayes, *pl.* keys, ii. 36, viii. 88. *kaies*, viii. 89.
Kayser, *s.* emperor, iii. 13.
Ken, *v.* know, viii. 8; teach, vi. 39, viii. 4, xi. 14; 1 *pr. pl.* v. 87. *kend*, *pt. s.* taught, ix. 38; *pp.* known, viii. 9. OE. *cennan*. OWS cand. *kenna*, teach, know.
Kene, *adj.* eager, bold, fierce, ii. 2, iii. 78, iv. 52, &c.; *adv.* v. 64.
Kepe, *v.* keep, retain, viii. 90, xi. 11, encounter to stop, x. 23. *keped*, *pt. s.* encountered, iv. 96.
Kid, see **Kith**.
Kinde, *s.* people, race, A ii. 277.
Kindel, *v.* light up, originate, ii. 10. *kindels*, *pr. s.* ii. 19, x. 23. *kindeld*, *pp.* xi. 26. OWS cand. *kynda*.
King, *s.* i. 1, 81. **kinges**, *gen. s.* king's, iii. 24, 50; *pl.* vii. 112.
Kirk, *s.* church, i. 78.
Kirtell, *s.* kirtle, shirt, viii. 61. OE. *cyrtel*. OWS cand. *kyrtill*. See **Planche**, *Cyclopaedia of Costume*, i. p. 320.
Kith, *v.* display, show, v. 69. *kid*, *pp.* made known, i. 75. OE. *cýðan*.

Knaw, *v.* know, v. 47; 1 *pr. pl.* vii. 125.
Knele, *v.* kneel, ix. 28.
Knight, *pl.* knights, v. 26. **Knyght**, A ii. 75. **knightses**, *pl.* iv. 29, 52, vii. 57, viii. 59.
Knok, *v.* knock, strike, vii. 130. *knoked*, *pp.* iii. 68. **knokked**, iii. 65.
Knokkes, *pl.* blows, vii. 98.
Kogges, *pl.* cogs, v. 73 (see note on iii. 79). Comp. OWS cand. *kuggr*.
Kouth, see **Kun**.
Kumly, see **Cumly**.
Kun, *pr. s.* knows how, is able, viii. 90. *kouth*, *pt. s.* knew, v. 69. OE. *cunnan*.
Kynrik, *s.* kingdom, A ii. 25. OE. *cynerice*.
Kys, *v.* kiss, vi. 28.

L.

Land, *s.* earth, vi. 41. *londe*, country, ix. 12.
Lang, *adv.* long, iii. 104; *adj.* xi. 19. *langer*, *adv.* longer, iv. 16, 35, 65, v. 21, vi. 63, vii. 80. *lenger*, *adj.* iv. 35. *leng*, *comp. adj.* and *adv.* (conjecture) iv. 35, vii. 80.
Lare, *s.* teaching, lesson, v. 9, vi. 22, x. 28, 29.
Lat, *v.* let, vii. 115; *imp.* viii. 90. *lete*, *pt. s.* vii. 91.
Lates, *pl.* doings, behaviour, A ii. 172. OWS cand. *ldt*.
Law, *adv.* low, vii. 97, 127, ix. 64, 65.
Laykes, *pl.* games, sports, iii. 64. OWS cand. *leikr*.
Layne, see **Lig**.
Ledderr, *s.* ladder, xi. 19.
Lede, *v.* guide, i. 35, xi. 39.
Ledeing, *s.* command, viii. 54.
Leders, *pl.* guides, commanders, viii. 94.

Lele, *adj.* true, not counterfeit, iii. 37.
Lely, *s.* lily, iv. 91, xi. 3.
Lely, *adv.* verily, vii. 73.
Len, *pr. s. subj.* grant, xi. 39. OE. *lēnan*.
Lend, *pt. pl. contracted*, dwelt, remained, iii. 31. *lended*, *pt. pl.* remained, viii. 45. OE. *lendan*, properly, to land, to arrive.
Leng, **Lenger**, see **Lang**.
Lepe, *v.* leap, v. 45; *imp. s.* xi. 27.
Lepes, *pl.* lips, A ii. 16.
Lere, *v.* teach, v. 58, vi. 42; learn, viii. 57, x. 28, 29. *lered*, *pt. pl.* taught, v. 14, 34.
Lese, *s.* falsehood, deceit, A ii. 185. OE. *lēas*. Goth. *laus*.
Let, *v.* hinder, stop, ix. 18. *letes*, *pr. s.* ix. 19. *lett*, *pt. pl.* iii. 64. OE. *lettan*.
Lete, see **Lat**.
Letherin, *adj.* leathern, xi. 19.
Leue, *v.* believe, v. 9; 2 *pr. pl.* vi. 22. *leues*, *imp. pl.* iii. 117, iv. 73. OE. (*ge*)*liefan*.
Leue, *s.* leave, vi. 61.
Leued, *pt. pl.* remained, ix. 65 (aphetic for *bileued*). *left*, *pt. s.* iii. 38. *leuid*, *pp.* left, i. 55, viii. 78. *left*, *pt. pl.* i. 89. See *bileuid*.
Lewte, *s.* truthfulness, A ii. 149.
Anglo-F. leute. OF. *loialté* = *loial-tatem*.
Lien, see **Lig**.
Lif, *v.* live, iv. 24. *lifes*, *pr. pl.* iii. 118.
Lig, *v.* lie, remain, vii. 80, 87. *ligges*, *pr. pl.* iii. 99. *lien*, vii. 135. *lye*, *pt. pl.* vii. 73. *ligand*, *pres. p.* viii. 71. *layne*, *pp.* laid, A i. 7. ME. *liggen*.
Likid, *pt. s.* it pleased, vii. 80.
Line, *s.* rope, xi. 19.
Lipard, *s.* leopard, xi. 3. What are now lions in the English shield were then leopards.

List, *pt. s. contracted*, it pleased, i. 71. OE. *lystan*.
List, *s.* skill, cunning, vi. 42. OE. *list*, wisdom.
Listens, *imp. pl.* listen, iii. 117. *lystens*, viii. 57.
Litell, *s.* little way, i. 57; *adj.* little, i. 82. *litill*, iv. 26, viii. 45.
Lithes, *imp. pl.* listen, i. T. 1, v. T. 1. OWScand. *hlýða*.
Liue, *s.* life, i. 89. *liues*, *pl.* vii. 143.
Londe, see **Land**.
Lordes, *pl.* lords, iii. 31, 44, iv. 52.
Lorn, *pp.* lost, iv. 92. *lorne*, A ii. 8. OE. (*for*) *lēosan* with *pp.* *loren*.
Loud or still, under all circumstances, viii. 54.
Loued, *pp.* praised, i. 53. OE. *lofian*.
Lout, *v.* bow low to, vi. 40, 41, vii. 97, ix. 64, x. 29. *louted*, *pt. pl.* ix. 65. OE. *lūtan*, to bow.
Luf, *s.* love, vii. 144.
Luked, *pt. s.* looked, ix. 47.
Lyde, *s.* people, nation, A ii. 51 (conjecture). OWScand. *lýðr*.
Lye, see **Lig**.
Lye, *s.* lie, falsehood, iv. 73.
Lystens, see **Listens**.

M.

Ma, *adj.* more (in number), i. 42, 48, 49. *mo*, *adj.* iii. 16, 79, v. 71.
Mai, 2 *pr. pl.* may, viii. 1. *moght*, *pt. s.* might, vi. 58; 2 *pt. s.* vii. 121. *might*, *pt. pl.* could, i. 87.
Main, *s.* might, ability, vi. 77. *maine*, i. 85. OE. *mægen*.
Maintene, *v.* maintain, i. 36, vii. 114. F. *maintenir*. L. *manu-tenere*.
Maistri, *s.* superiority, show of superiority, iii. 113, vii. 41.

- Mak**, *v.* make, i. 62, v. 10, &c.
make, v. I. makes, *pr. pl.* v. 3.
mase, makes, viii. 34. *maked*,
pp. i. 49. *makked*, vii. 41.
made, 2 *pt. s.* i. 5; *pt. pl.* v. 84.
Manasinges, *pl.* threats, menaces,
i. 49. Present participle of
manase. OF. *menacer*. L.
**mināciāre* = *minatias facere*.
Mane, see **Mone**.
Manere, *s.* way, fashion, vii. 116,
ix. 55.
Mani, *adj.* many, iii. 5, iv. 3, v.
48, &c. *many*, i. 59, iii. 105,
v. 18, &c.
Manikyn, *adj.* many kinds of,
A ii. 1. Comp. *monies kunnes*,
Lazamon, 1710.
Mans, *gen. s.* man's, xi. 9. *men*,
pl. v. 34, 46, &c. *mens*, *gen.*
pl. iii. 84, v. 2.
Marchandes, *pl.* merchants, x.
26. OF. *marchant*. L. **mer-*
cantem.
Marche, *s.* boundary, district, A
ii. 78.
Mare, *adj.* more, viii. 3.
Mase, see **Mak**.
Maste, *adj.* most, iv. 7, vii. 26.
mast, *adv.* A ii. 81.
Mater, *s.* subject, vii. 17.
Mawgre, *s.* misfortune, what is
displeasing, i. 50. F. *mal gré*.
L. *malum gratum*.
Mede, *s.* reward, i. 50, v. 39, 81, &c.
Mekill, *adj.* much, great, i. 85,
iii. 18, 38, 62, &c. *mekil*, v.
51, xi. 27. OE. *micel*.
Mend, *pp.* behaved, acted, i. 29.
Aphetic for *demeaned*.
Mend, *imp. pl.* amend, viii. 7.
Mene, 1 *pr. s.* signify, intend, xi. 4,
5. *menid*, *pp.* v. I. *ment*, v. 24.
Mens, see **Mans**.
Menȝe, *s.* army, followers, i. 82,
iv. 11, x. T. I. OF. *meyné*.
L. **manionata* for **mansionata*,
household.
Mere, *s.* mother, A ii. 80.
Meri, *adj.* merry, v. 32.
Merkes, *pl.* mark, object, ix. 13.
Mete, *s.* meat, iv. 85.
Mete, *v.* meet, v. 23. *metes*, *pr.*
s. ii. 27. *met*, *pt. pl.* vii. 63.
mett, *pp.* iii. 63. *met*, ix. 4.
Mi, *adj.* my, v. 4, 5.
Middes, *s.* midst, v. 56.
Midelerd, *s.* the earth, i. 5.
Might, *s.* power, might, iii. 8,
vii. 31, 43. *myght*, iii. 112.
mightes, *pl.* iv. 7, vii. 26.
Minde, *s.* remembrance, thought,
xi. 4.
Mirthes, *pl.* joy, vi. 27.
Mis, *v.* want, feel the want of, iii.
113, vi. 27. *mys*, vii. 119.
missed, *pt. s.* ix. 13.
Misbyde, *v.* to injure, A ii. 52.
OE. *misbēodan*.
Mischance, *s.* misfortune, iv. 20,
viii. 30, ix. 4.
Misdede, *s.* misdeed, viii. 7.
Misfare, *pr. s. subj.* fare badly, x.
27.
Misliked, *pt. s.* it displeased, vii.
60.
Misliking, *s.* displeasure, vii. 61.
Mo, see **Ma**.
Mode, *s.* mood, mind, vi. 77.
Moder, *s.* mother, iv. 10.
Mody, *adj.* courageous, proud, v.
42. OE. *mōdig*. Goth. *mōdags*.
Moght, see **Mai**.
Mold, *s.* earth, viii. 3.
Moldwerp, *s.* mole, A ii. 213.
ME. *molde*, earth, and *werpen*,
to cast.
Mone, *s.* moon, i. 5.
Mone, *s.* complaint, ii. 27, ix. 45,
xi. 5. *mane*, iii. 108.
Mone, *s.* money, iii. 35, 37.
More, *s.* moor, ix. 4.
Moste, *adv.* most, iii. 46.
Mot, *pr. s. subj.* may, i. 33, 35, v.
53, xi. 38; *may it*, v. 78; 2 *pr.*
s. subj. ix. 59; *pr. pl. subj.* i. 50.
mote, A i. 9. *most*, *pt. pl.*
must, i. 67, 80, iii. 72, x. 17, 18.

Mote, *v.* discuss the point, vi. 28.
Literally, to plead a law-case.
OE. *mōtian*; *mōt-hūs*, place for
discussion.

Mowth, *s.* mouth, v. 1, vii. 7.

Mun, *pr. s.* shall, iii. 119; *pr. pl.*
i. 48; 2 *pr. pl.* vi. 27, viii. 2.
OWScand. *monu* later *munu*.

Murning, *s.* mourning, sorrow,
vii. 119, viii. 2.

Myght, see **Might**.

Myle, *s.* the time it takes to walk
a mile, i. 84. Comp. G. *stunde*,
hour, and hence hour's walk.
myle, *pl.* miles, viii. 42.

Mys, see **Mis**.

Myst, *s.* mist, iv. 43.

N.

Nakers, *pl.* kettledrums, iv. 80,
A i. 35. See Prompt. Parvu-
lorum, p. 350. OF. *nacaire*.
LL. *nacāra*, from Arab. *naqāra*,
drum.

Nane, *pron.* none, iii. 107.

Ne, *conj.* nor, iii. 110, viii. 75,
78; *adv.* not, iv. 36, v. 15, viii.
76.

Nede, *s.* need, time of need, v. 37,
xi. 37. *nedes*, *adv.* of necessity,
iii. 72, ix. 28.

Neghed, *pt. pl.* approached, x. 15.

Nere, *adv.* near, iv. 41, 42. *nerr*,
comp. adv. nearer, x. 15.

Neuen, *v.* name, A ii. 93.

Neuer, *adv.* never, ix. 31. *neuer*
pe les, *adv.* nevertheless, i. 63.

Nighthes, *pl.* nights, i. 51, vii. 171.

Nobill, *adj.* noble, iv. 22, vii. 18,
viii. 65.

Nobillay, *s.* renown, fame, A ii.
156. Anglo-F. *noble* (Chardry),
from *nobleier*, to excel. L.
nobilitare.

Noght, *adv.* not, i. 16, 21, &c.;
s. nothing, i. 47, iii. 48, viii. 55,
x. 21.

Nokes, *pl.* nooks, vii. 5.

Nomen, *pt. pl.* took, ix. 53. OE.
niman.

No thing, *adv.* not at all, vii. 146.

Number, *s.* number, iii. 82.

Nowþer, *conj.* neither, vii. 100,
viii. 75. *nowther*, viii. 78.

O.

About, *adv.* approximately, i. 84;
around, ii. 15, vi. 36, vii. 96;
employed on, i. 30, ix. 61; *prep.*
round, iv. 63, viii. 68.

Of, *prep.* on account of, iii. 58.

O-ferrum, *adv.* afar, at a distance,
vii. 70, 89. For *on ferrum* as
though dative of OE. *feor*, but
really arising out of OE. *feor-*
ran, *adv.*

Ogayn, *adv.* back, i. 15. *ogaines*,
prep. against, i. 14. *ogaynes*,
iii. 94, 98. *oganis*, iv. 38.

Okes, *pl.* oaks, iv. 62.

Oliue, *adj.* alive, v. 44, 45. OE.
on life (dat.), but *of lyue* with
same meaning in Horstmann,
A. L., ii. 353/354, and *oliue*
meaning dead, id. 229/128.

Omang, *prep.* among, vii. 110,
142.

On, *prep.* by, vii. 104, viii. 79;
against, x. 21.

One, *adj.* alone, only, viii. 61.

Opon, *prep.* upon, i. 56, iii. 76, &c.

Or, *conj.* before, iii. 63, vi. 48, vii.
130, 164. OE. *ār*.

Ordanis, *pr. s.* determines, iv. 5.
OF. *ordener*. L. *ordinare*.

Oper, *adj.* i. 42. *opers*, *adj. gen.*
of the other, vii. 81.

Oure, *adj.* our, i. 81, iii. 11, vii.
170.

Outen, *adj.* foreign, A ii. 181.

Outraid, *pt. s.* squandered, threw
away, A ii. 124. F. *outrage*.
L. **ültra-aticum*.

Oway, *adj.* gone, worthless, v. 36,
away, vii. 117, xi. 1; *adv.* away,
vii. 116.

P.

Palays, *s.* palace, vii. 166.
 Palet, *s.* head, vii. 130. OF.
palet, sort of head-piece. See
 Prompt. Parvulorum, p. 378.
 Pall, *s.* robe, stately dress, vii. 110.
 OE. *pall* from L. *pallium*.
 Pas, *v.* escape, iii. 56; 2 *pr. s.*
subj. vii. 130.
 Pauliyoun, *s.* tent, iv. 63. pauli-
 liownes, *pl.* flags, xi. 32. OF.
pavillon. L. *papilionem*.
 Pay, *s.* satisfaction, iii. 10. OF.
paie. L. *pacare*.
 Pelers, *pl.* plunderers, thieves, ii.
 15.
 Pencell, *s.* pennon, little banner,
 vii. 46. OF. *penoncel* (through
penocel). L. **pennionem-ic-il-*
lum.
 Pere, *s.* peer, equal, iii. 14.
 Pere, *s.* pear, i. 16, 17.
 Pese, *s.* peace, i. 92.
 Pine, *s.* trouble, vii. 77, xi. 20.
pīn (A.S. Chronicle, A.D. 1137)
 from L. *poena*.
 Pitaile, *s.* infantry, vii. 56. OF.
pietaille. L. **pēdālia*.
 Plaine, *s.* field of battle, i. 83.
 Plate, *s.* plate armour, vii. 46.
 Play, *s.* pleasure, vii. 108.
 Playne, *adj.* of full value, iii. 35.
 F. *plein*. L. *plēnus*.
 Pleyne, *v.* complain, vii. 76. OF.
plaindre. L. *plangere*.
 Pointes, *pl.* plans, iii. 46.
 Polled, *pp.* cropped, vii. 131.
 Pople, *s.* people, iii. 19. puple,
 viii. 67.
 Pouer, *adj.* poor, iii. 122.
 Prais, 1 *pr. s.* praise, vii. 109, 146.
 prays, *v.* 59.
 Pray, *s.* prey, i. 38.
 Prelates, Church clergy, *pl.* iii.
 17.
 Prese, *s.* throng (of battle), i. 90,
 vii. 45; throng (of courtiers),
 vii. 109.

Prest, *adj.* ready, v. 61, vii. 25,
 viii. 67, A ii. 231. OF. *prest*.
 L. **praestum*.
 Priked, *pp.* spurred, ridden hard,
 ii. 15.
 Prise, *s.* value, i. 17; fame, glory,
 iv. 26. OF. *pris*. L. *pretium*.
 Priue, *adj.* secret, privy, vii. 5.
 Proferd, *pt. pl.* offered, iii. 23.
 Proper, *adj.* fit, fine, vii. 25.
 Proue, *v.* test, try the value of, iv.
 15, v. 61. proued, *pt. pl.* tried,
 vii. 42.
 Prowd, *adj.* proud, vii. 110.
 Puple, see Pople.
 Purchas, *s.* gain, A i. 55. OF.
purchacier. L. **procaptiare*.
 Purpos, *s.* intention, purpose, viii.
 39. purpose, xi. 23.
 Puruay, *v.* provide for, iv. 34.
 OF. *pourveoir*. L. *providere*.
 Puruiance, *s.* provision, manage-
 ment, vii. 146.
 Puttes, *imp. pl.* put, xi. 32. put,
pt. pl. iii. 95, vii. 77.

Q.

Quell, *v.* kill, v. 24. qwell, i.
 78.
 Quit, *pt. pl.* paid, vii. 66. See
 next word.
 Quite, *adj.* deprived of, vii. 124,
 125. OF. *quite*. L. **quitum*.

R.

Rade, see Ride.
 Railed, *pp.* set in order, iv. 83.
 OF. *reiller*. L. *rēgulare*: comp.
 OHG. *rigil*.
 Rapes, *pl.* ropes, viii. 68.
 Rapely, *adv.* quickly, hastily, vi.
 67. OWScand. *hrapa*, to hasten.
 Rathly, *adv.* quickly, vii. 91, viii.
 6. OE. *hraðe*.
 Raw, *s.* line or order (of battle),
 iv. 79, v. 48. row, line, iv. 83.
 Reche, *v.* reach, vii. 15.

Rede, *v.* read, vii. 1.
 Rede, *s.* advice, counsel, iii. 23.
 Rede, 1 *pr. s.* advise, x. 19. OE. *rēdan*.
 Rede, *adj.* red, viii. 41, A ii. 30.
 Redles, *adj.* without counsel, without resource, vi. 14, 37.
 Redy, *adj.* prepared, i. 32, 33, &c.; prompt, ix. 43.
 Recht, see Right.
 Ren, *v.* run, vi. 37, vii. 91, viii. 6.
 Reng, *v.* reign, A ii. 6.
 Renowne, *s.* reputation, fame, viii. 81. OF. *renon*. L. *renomen*.
 Rent, *s.* income, revenue, vi. 13.
 Rese, *s.* haste, vii. 47. OE. *ræs*, rush, race.
 Reson, *s.* reason, x. 27.
 Rest, *pt. s.* rested, remained, vi. 75.
 Reued, *pt. pl.* reaved, carried off, iii. 122, ix. 24, x. 18. OE. *rēafian*.
 Rewfull, *adj.* pitiful, vi. 13.
 rewful, vi. 38.
 Riche, *adj.* splendid, iv. 25, 79.
 Ride, *v.* ride, vi. 14. *rade*, *pt. s.* vii. T. 2, 47, ix. 2.
 Rifild, *pt. s.* robbed, plundered, ii. 16; *pp.* ii. 17. F. *rifler*.
 Rig, *s.* back, vii. 81. OE. *hrycg*.
 Right, *adj.* true, rightful, iv. 28; direct, vi. 54; *adv.* truly, exactly, vii. 1, 11; *recht*, *s.* claim, what is due, vi. 78.
 Rightwis, *adj.* rightful, vii. 113. OE. *rihtwis*.
 Riueling, *s.* rough boot made of raw hide, brogue, here a nickname for the Scotch, ii. 19. OE. **gerisfjan*, to wrinkle. *rifelingas*, gloss. on *obstrigelli*, Wright-Wülker, Vocabularies, 125/53. *rifelede*, gloss. on *rugosus*, Napier, Altenglische Glossen, in Engl. Stud., xi. p. 66. Comp. MHG. *ribbalin*.

Rode, *s.* rood, cross, vi. 75, xi. 9. OE. *rōd*.
 Row, see Raw.
 Rowt, *s.* company, i. 32, vii. 94. rout, i. 33, ii. 16, 17, &c. OF. *route*. L. **rūpta*.
 Rughfute, *adj.* rough-footed, ii. 19.

S.

Sad, *adj.* serious, earnest, v. 2.
 Saine, *v.* say, i. 81. say, i. 65, iii. 36, 71, ix. 15; *imp. s.* xi. 25. sai, 1 *pr. s.* vii. 73. say, v. 31. sais, *pr. s.* vii. 169, *pr. pl.* v. 88. said, *pt. s.* i. 46, *pt. pl.* i. 43.
 Saite, *s.* silk, A ii. 84. ? For say, OF. *seie*. Comp. G. *seide*. But perhaps *and saite* is a corruption of *unsete*, unbearable, huge.
 Sakles, *adj.* innocent, ii. 3. OE. *saclēas*. Comp. OWS cand. *saklauss*.
 Sal, shall, *pr. s.* v. 6, *pr. pl.* vi. 33. sall, 1 *pr. s.* i. T. 1; *pr. s.* ii. 34, vi. 21, x. 22; *pr. pl.* iii. 118. sale, *pr. s.* vii. 15. suld, *pt. s.* would, i. 43, 46, *pt. pl.* iii. 53.
 Saltou, 2 *pr. s.* wilt thou, ii. 23, x. 21, xi. 25.
 Salue, *v.* salute, greet, v. 4. F. *saluer*. L. *salutare*.
 Samyn, *adv.* together, A ii. 236. samyn, *v.* to gather, A ii. 243. OE. *æt-somne*, *sammian*.
 Sandes, *pl.* sands, v. 71.
 Sare, *adj.* sore, i. 15; *adv.* sorely, bitterly, v. 12, 13, viii. 60. sore, vii. 156.
 Sari, *adj.* sorry, vii. 88. sary, wretched, i. 72, 73, v. 28.
 Satt, see Sittes.
 Saul, *s.* soul, iii. 3. saules, *pl.* iii. 114. sawls, v. 88.
 Sawes, *pl.* sayings, v. 2, ix. 56. OE. *sagu*.
 Sayland, *pres. p.* sailing, v. 60.

Schac, *v.* shake, iv. 30.
 Schame, *s.* shame, i. 64, ii. 12, &c. shame, i. 65.
 Schawes, *pl.* thickets, shaws, xi. 2. OE. *scaga*.
 Scheld, *s.* shield, i. 14. schelde, iv. 50, vii. 105.
 Scheltron, *s.* squadron, v. 63. schilterouns, *pl.* vi. 6. OE. *scieldtruma*, shield troop. Mod. Eng. *shelter*. Comp. 'Pey hadde to holde stout scheldes trome,' Octavian, 50/1595, and see Barbour, Bruce, xii. 429 note.
 Schende, *v.* disgrace, confound, vi. 21. schent, *pp.* ix. 26, 27.
 Schene, *adj.* bright, glittering, v. 63, vi. 6, vii. 105, xi. 2.
 Schent, see Schende.
 Schew, *v.* show, vii. 12, xi. 2.
 Schilterouns, see Scheltron.
 Schipherdstaues, *pl.* shepherds' staves, ix. 20.
 Schipmen, *pl.* sailors, iii. 49, v. 67.
 Schippes, *pl.* ships, i. 19, iii. 91, v. 71.
 Schope, *pt. s.* created, iii. 1.
 Schoting, *s.* shooting, v. 49.
 Schowre, *s.* abundance, ix. 43. OE. *scūr*.
 Schrewes, *pl.* rascals, malicious persons, ix. 26, 27. OE. *scrēawa*, shrewmouse.
 Schriue, *v.* confess, x. 20.
 Scomfiting, *s.* discomfiting, A i. 26.
 Se, *s.* sea, iii. 1, vii. 9, 11, 15.
 Se, *pr. pl.* see, vii. 70 (perhaps, *pt. pl.*). saw, *pt. s.* vii. 79. sene, *adj.* ii. 3, iv. 14, vii. 104, viii. 79. OE. *gesēne*, *adj.*
 See-gronde, *s.* bottom of the sea, x. 4. OE. *sæ-grund*.
 Sege, *s.* siege, vii. 171, viii. T. 2. OF. *sege*. L. **sēdicum*.
 Seke, *pl.* sick people, A ii. 146.
 Sembland, *s.* mien, appearance, vii. 104, viii. 79. OF. *sam-*

blant, *semblant*. L. **sīmilantem*.
 Sembled, *pt. s.* assembled, iii. 87.
 Semely, *adj.* becoming, handsome, vi. 5. semly, viii. 28. OWScand. *sēmiligr*.
 Semid, *pt. s.* seemed, iv. 61, v. 49.
 Sen, *conj.* since, i. 72; *prep.* iii. 109. Contracted ME. *sippen*. OE. *siddan*, after that.
 Send, *imp. s.* send, i. 7. sendes, *imp. pl.* xi. 33. sent, *pt. pl.* i. 19; *pp.* iii. 49.
 Sere, *adj.* several, ix. 56. OWScand. *sér*, dative of reflexive pronoun, for oneself.
 Sergantes, *pl.* sergeants, soldiers, v. 22. segantes, viii. 28.
 Seruis, *s.* service, attendance, ix. 43.
 Set, 2 *pr. s. subj.* betake, apply, x. 20. sett, *pt. pl.* set, vii. 68.
 Sepin, *adv.* afterwards, ix. 44 (conjecture). sithen, A ii. 57. OE. *siddan*.
 Seuyn, seven, iv. 38.
 Sixty, sixty, iii. 98.
 Site, *s.* sorrow, vii. 65. OWScand. **syt*, *sūt*, sorrow; *sýta*, to wail. The phrase sorrow and site (soght) is corrupted into sorrow unsoght as in York Plays, 103/44.
 Sittes, 2 *pr. s.* sittest, i. 1. satt, *pt. s.* ix. 35.
 Sithen, see sepin.
 Skarlet, *s.* scarlet cloth, x. 12.
 Skot, *s.* Scot, ii. 33. Skotte (conjecture), ii. 25. Skottes, *pl.* ii. 1. Scottes, ix. 61. Skottes, *gen. pl.* i. 87.
 Skottis, *adj.* Scotch, i. 79.
 Skrith, *v.* slip away, escape, v. 68. Comp. Cath. Angl. *scrythe*, labi, labare, lapsare. OWScand. *skrīða*, to creep, crawl, slide. OE. *scrīðan*, to go, to wander.
 Sla, *v.* slay, i. 46. slogh, 2 *pt. pl.* ii. 3; *pt. pl.* iii. 61, 97. slayne, *pp.* vii. 54. slaine, vii. 156.

- Slake, *v.* grow less, disappear, *v.*
4. *slaked*, *pp.* lessened, i. 53,
v. 5. OE. *slacian*.
- Slaken, *v.* diminish, ix. 49.
slokening, *pres. p.* as *s.* slaking,
extinguishing, A ii. 147. Comp.
slokyne, extinguiere, Cath. Angl.
- Slayne, see *Sla*.
- Slike, *adj.* such, i. 26, 62, viii. 35.
OWScand. *slíkr*.
- Slogh, see *Sla*.
- Smale, *adj.* small, i. 6, iii. 82, vi.
64. small, v. 80, xi. 20.
- Smerted, *pt. s.* smarted, pained,
v. 13.
- Snaper, *v.* stumble, x. 16.
- Snaw, *s.* snow, v. 49.
- Snell, *adj.* quick, v. 22. OE.
snell.
- Socore, *s.* help, i. 7. *socoure*,
v. to help, iii. 22.
- Sogat, *adv.* thus, in such a way,
iv. 93, viii. 96. ME. *gate*, way.
Similar accusative adverbs are,
þusgat, Cursor, 1242, *hugat*, id.
4629, *algat*, and *ell* (usually
elles), Ratis Raving, 19/633.
- Soght, *pt. s.* sought, v. 33, vi.
53; *pt. pl.* made for, iii. 73,
sought, iii. 107; attacked, vii.
65; *pp.* sought, viii. 50.
- Somer, *s.* summer, xi. 2. *somers*,
gen. s. of summer, x. 7.
- Sone, *adv.* soon, i. 7, iii. 49, 64,
&c. *sune*, v. 5, 25.
- Songen, *pt. pl.* sang, vii. 138.
- Sorow, *s.* sorrow, i. 64, v. 4, 5,
vi. 12. *sorow of*, grief for, x.
20.
- Sowed, *pt. s.* smarted, v. 12 (said
especially of a tingling or sting-
ing sensation, Jamieson). Comp.
OWScand. *sviða*. OSwed. *sviþa*.
- Sowre, *s.* bitter, ix. 44.
- South, *s.* south, vii. 7.
- Spac, see *Speke*.
- Space, *s.* room, place, vii. 31.
- Spare, *v.* refrain from, iv. 16, vii.
23, 121, viii. 23, x. 1.
- Speche, *s.* speaking, talk, vii. 121,
viii. 23.
- Spede, *v.* cause to prosper, i. 33;
to succeed, x. i, xi. 38. OE.
spēdan.
- Speke, *v.* speak, vii. 122, x. 1.
spekes, *pr. s.* ii. 31. *spac*, *pt.*
pl. iii. 20.
- Spere, *s.* spear, i. 14, iii. 96, &c.
- Spill, *v.* waste, ii. 33.
- Sprede, *v.* disperse, i. 37.
- Staf, *s.* staff, vii. 100.
- Stalworthly, *adv.* stoutly, v. 43,
viii. 86. *stalworthly*, iv. 50.
- Stand, *v.* stand, xi. 33. *standes*,
pr. s. stands, v. 74. *stonde*, *v.*
ix. 11. *stode*, *pt. s.* iii. 75, *pt.*
pl. v. 75; 2 *pt. pl.* x. 30.
- Stane-still, *adj.* still as stone, ii.
32.
- Stareand, *pres. p.* staring, iii.
67.
- Starkly, *adv.* exceedingly, A i. 7.
OE. *stearclīce*.
- Sted, *pp.* bested, in straitly sted,
hard pressed, A ii. 242.
- Stede, *s.* steed, i. 54, iii. 24, &c.
stedes, *pl.* vii. 101, ix. 11.
- Stede, *s.* place, or perhaps stead,
conjuncture (comp. Sir Gowther,
489), viii. 43. OE. *stede*.
- Stele, *s.* steal, iii. 84, viii. 14.
- Stele, *s.* steel, iii. 102.
- Steren, *adj.* stern, ii. 13.
- Sternes, *pl.* stars, iii. 67.
OWScand. *stiarna*.
- Stif, *adj.* strong, stout, iv. 76, vii.
50.
- Stik, *v.* stab, viii. 14.
- Still, *adv.* quietly, iii. 87, iv. 94,
vi. 57; *adj.* quiet, v. 75, vii.
101.
- Stint, *pt. s.* stopped, ended, v. 43.
OSwed. *stynta*, to shorten. OE.
stýntan, to stupefy.
- Stirt, *pt. s.* hastened, xi. 15.
- Stode, see *Stand*.
- Stole, *s.* stole, vii. 138. L. *stola*.
- Stonde, see *Stand*.

Stound, *s.* time, short time, v. 75.
 stounde, A i. 16. stond, A ii.
 31. OE. *stund*.
 Stout, *adj.* proud, haughty, i. 40,
 x. 30.
 Stowre, *s.* conflict, i. 89. OF.
estor, estoure, from OHG. *sturm*.
 Strate, *s.* narrow way, pass, vi.
 56. OF. *estroit*. L. **strictum*.
 But Björkman, 97, takes it as
 road, way. OWScand. *stræti*.
 Streame, *s.* stream, river, v. 74.
 streimis, *pl.* iii. 73.
 Streimers, *pl.* long and narrow
 flags, v. 75.
 Strenkith, *imp. s.* strengthen, vi.
 77; *s.* strength, x. 30.
 Stretes, *pl.* streets, ii. 25.
 Streuyn, *pp.* struggled, fought,
 viii. 86.
 Strif, *s.* dispute, iii. 4. striue, *s.*
 conflict, v. 43.
 Stroy, *v.* destroy, iii. 48.
 Stumbill, *v.* stumble, vii. 99.
 stumbilde, *pt. pl.* i. 88.
 Suld, see Sal.
 Sum, *adj.* some, i. 17, ii. 32, iii.
 62, &c.; *pron.* iii. 65, 67, 68,
 99.
 Sun, *s.* son, vii. 28, viii. 70, 92.
 sons, *pl.* iii. 15.
 Suth, *s.* truth, i. 76, 81, iii.
 71, &c.; *adj.* true, v. 2. OE.
sōð.
 Suthwest, *s.* south-west, v. 60.
 Swelt, *pt. s.* died, xi. 9. OE.
sweltan.
 Swerd, *s.* sword, viii. 13, 61.
 Swete, *s.* sweet, ix. 44.
 Swink, *v.* toil, work, iv. 86. OE.
swincan.
 Swire, *s.* neck, viii. 68. OE.
swēora, swīra.
 Swith, *adv.* quickly, v. 67, viii.
 51, ix. 43; very, A ii. 215. OE.
swīð, strong.
 Syde, *s.* coast, iii. 74; side, vi.
 12, xi. 33. side, i. 19, vi. 65.
 sides, *pl.* i. 15, vii. 52.

Syn, *s.* sin, iv. 12, vi. 76, &c.
 sins, *pl.* vi. 81.
 Syr, *s.* sir, xi. 6. syre, *s.* lord,
 viii. 69.

T.

Taburns, *pl.* tabours, small
 drums, x. 8. OF. *tabourin*,
 diminutive of *tabour* from Span.
atambor of Arabic origin.
 Taile, *s.* tail, vii. 15.
 Tak, *v.* take, vii. 24, 140. toke,
pt. s. iii. T. 2, 33. tuke, vi. 61.
 toke, *pt. pl.* iii. 45, viii. 43;
 2 *pt. pl.* viii. 11. tok, *pt. pl.* v.
 18. tane, *pp.* ix. 66. taken,
 ix. 34.
 Tame, *adj.* civilized, i. 60.
 Tarettes, *pl.* transport vessels of
 the galley type, iii. 80. OF.
taride, of Arabic origin.
 Tched, *pt. s.* taught, ix. 3.
 Tene, *s.* sorrow, trouble, v. 65, vi.
 2, A ii. 135. OE. *tēona*, injury.
 Teres, *pl.* tears, vii. 91.
 þa, *pron.* *pl.* those, v. 61. Comp.
 Cursor, 11537. þo, iv. 32, v.
 57. þa, the, or that, vii. 166.
 þai, *pron.* they, i. 15. þam, them,
 i. 29; to them, i. 73. þaire,
 their, i. 16, 19, 24, 25, 38.
 þayre, *gen. pl.* of them, iii. 23.
 OE. *þāra*.
 þan, *adv.* then, iii. 14, 33, &c.;
conj. than, i. 18, iii. 112.
 Thar, *pr. s.* it needs, vi. 23. OE.
he ðearf from **ðurfan*.
 þarat, *adv.* thereat, at that, iii. 42.
 þarby, *adv.* near that place, iv.
 41, xi. 20.
 þare, *adv.* there, i. 59, ii. 22, 23,
 &c. þar, iv. 87. þaire, ix. 65.
 þarein, *adv.* in it, vi. 74, vii. 14,
 xi. 10, 11.
 þareobout, *adv.* about that, i. 30.
 þare-ogayne, *adv.* against it, iii.
 36.
 þarfore, *adv.* therefore, i. 79, vii.
 127, ix. 64.

- parto**, *adv.* for that purpose, thereto, iii. 8, 32.
payre, see **pai**.
peder, *adv.* thither, iii. 77.
pen, *adv.* thence, A i. 60.
pi, *adj.* thy, i. 7.
Thik, *adj.* thick, vii. 155.
Thing, *s.* anything, iii. 26.
Think, *pr. s.* sees fit, iv. 6.
pir, *pron.* these, iii. 38, 120, vii. 4, ix. 56.
pise, these, ii. 26.
Thoght, *pt. s.* thought, v. 42; *pl.* i. 41, iv. 51; *pp.* iv. 33, viii. 53.
Thowsand, thousand, vii. 50, 55.
Thre, three, viii. 42.
Thretes, *pr. s.* threatens, ii. 31.
Threting, *s.* threatening, ii. 30.
Thretty, thirty, vii. 50, 55.
Thriue, *v.* prosper, v. 42.
Thurgh, *prep.* through, i. 68, vii. 43, 155, ix. 10, 17.
Tide, *pt. s.* happened, i. 72. For *bitid*.
Tide, *s.* time, season, vi. 61, xi. 31, A ii. 225. *tyde*, i. 17, viii. 26, x. 7.
Tight, *pp.* purposed, determined, vi. 1.
Til, *conj.* till, v. 76. *till*, v. 62.
Till, *prep.* to, iii. 54, iv. 95, &c. *tyll*, i. T. 1.
Timber, *v.* build, hence make, set up, vi. 2. AS. *timbran*.
Tint, see **Tyne**.
Tipandes, *pl.* tidings, news, iii. 58. OWScand. *tīdindi*. OSwed. *tīpande*.
Tithe, *s.* tenth part, v. 70.
To, *prep.* against, iii. 5; until, iv. 6.
To, *adv.* too, vi. 50, vii. 51, viii. 91.
To-dongyn, *pp.* utterly beaten, thrashed, vii. 148. *to*, intensive prefix. OSwed. *diunga*, to strike; comp. OWScand. *dengja*, Björkman, 207.
Tok, *toke*, see **Tak**.
Tolde, *pp.* held, considered, iv. 77; counted, vii. 55.
Toun, *s.* town, iii. 29, vii. 68, 89, 94. *toune*, i. 57, ii. 7, &c. *tounes*, *pl.* iii. 44.
Towre, *s.* tower, ix. 40, 41, 52, 66.
To-3ere, *adv.* this year, *lit.* for the (present) year, vii. 129, ix. 58.
Trais, *v.* deceive, vii. 150. Aphetic for *betraiss* (Barbour, Bruce, Glossary), an alternative form of *betray*, due to influence of OF. *traison*.
Traisted, *pt. s.* with *of*, trusted in, expected, iv. 58. OWScand. *treysta*.
Treget, *s.* magic, vii. 136. OF. *tresgiet*. L. *tra(ns)jactus*.
Treson, *s.* treason, i. 76, vii. 62, 149, viii. 38, xi. 24. OF. *traison*, L. **traditionem*.
Trest, *s.* trust, vii. 160.
Trew, *adj.* true, just, i. 1.
Trewly, *adv.* truly, iii. 11 (*trely*, MS.), iv. 4, vii. 55.
Trey, *s.* affliction, sorrow, vi. 2, A ii. 135. AS. *trega*, tribulation.
Trip, *s.* stumble, vii. 159 (see note).
Trompes, see **Trumpes**.
Trone, *s.* throne, i. 1.
Trow, *v.* believe, vi. 60. *trowed* *pt. s.* looked for, iv. 95. *truande* *pres. p.* confiding, trusting, A ii. 23. OE. *trēowian*, *trūwian*.
Trumped, *pt. pl.* blew trumpets, v. 29.
Trumpes, *pl.* trumpets, iv. 80. *trompes*, x. 8.
Trumping, *s.* trumpeting, v. 65.
Trus, *imp. pl.* make ready, *lit.* pack up for departure, xi. 31. OF. *trosser*, formed from *torsée*. LL. *torsata*.
Tuke, see **Tak**.
Tung, *s.* language, iii. 20.

Tyde, see Tide.

Tyll, see Till.

Tyme, *s.* time, ii. 32, vii. 152, ix. 34.

Tyne, *v.* lose, x. 18. tint, *pt. pl.* vii. 143. OWScand. *týna*.

U, V.

Umlap, *v.* embrace, surround, A ii. 45. AS. *ymb*, about; so in next two words.

Vmset, *pt. s.* beset, vii. 96.

Vmstride, *v.* bestride, iv. 69.

Vncurtayse, *adj.* uncourteous, unknighly, vii. 145.

Vnder, *adj.* beaten, defeated, ii. 18.

Vnderlout, *v.* bow in submission, A ii. 181. OE. *underlutan*, to stoop under. OWScand. *lúta*, to bow down.

Vngayne, *adj.* harmful, A ii. 69. OWScand. *gegn*, serviceable, kindly.

Vnhale, *adj.* unsound, dishonest, vi. 69.

Vnkind, *adj.* unnatural, v. 11, vii. 145.

Vnkouthē, *adj.* unknown, strange, A ii. 24.

Vnsele, *adv.* unhappily, ix. 27. OE. *unsæl*. Orm's *usell* is OWScand. *úsæll*.

Vntill, *prep.* unto, iii. 39, 114.

Vnto, *prep.* to, v. 25, vii. 48.

W.

Wailoway, *interj.* alas! A ii. 81. OE. *weilāwei*.

Wait, *v.* to watch for an opportunity to harm, to injure, i. 64. Comp. OF. *guetier*. F. *guetter*.

Waite, see Wit.

Wake, *v.* to watch, to be anxious, v. 3. waked, *pp.* watched, i. 51. waken, wakened, ix. 33; in trouble, ix. 50.

Wakkins, *pr. s.* awakens, is aroused, vi. 10. wakkind, *pt. s.* roused, stirred, ix. 50.

Wald, see Will.

Walkes, *pr. s.* travels, spreads, viii. 29. walked, *pt. s.* x. 9.

Wall, *s.* choice, v. 77. OWScand. *val*.

Walles, *pl.* walls, vi. 32, 36.

Wan, see Win.

Wandreth, *s.* peril, trouble, A ii. 264. OWScand. *vandræði*, difficulty.

Wane, see Wone.

Waniand, *s.* lit. waning (moon), v. 30, ix. 25, x. 6. See ix. 25, note.

Wanted, *pt. s.* failed to get, vii. 103.

Wapin, *s.* weapon, v. 36, vii. 133, viii. 15, x. 2. wapen, ix. 32.

Wapnid, *pp.* armed, iv. 39.

War, *imp. pl.* beware, ii. 6.

War, *adj.* wary, cautious, vi. 8.

Wardaine, *s.* warden, viii. 83.

We, *interj.* alas! A ii. 23. OE. *wæ*.

Wede, *s.* armour, v. 38, viii. 5, ix. 37, x. 2. OE. *wæd*, garment.

Weder, *s.* weather, iv. 48.

Wele, *adv.* well, ii. 5, iii. 101, &c.; quite, vii. 57, viii. 42; reasonably, i. 36; highly, i. 41.

Wele, *s.* weal, success, iii. 18, 52, vi. 9, vii. 117, viii. 16. OE. *wela*.

Weleful, *adj.* prosperous, viii. 17.

Welth, *s.* riches, vii. 153. welthes, *pl.* x. 11.

Wend, *v.* turn back, i. 67. wonde, ix. 10. wende, go, ix. 19. wendes, *imp. s.* xi. 29. went, *pp.* gone, vi. 9, vii. 82.

Wene, 1 *pr. s.* believe, ii. 4, 5, v. 66, vi. 8. wend, *pt. pl.* imagined, supposed, iii. 62. wened, iii. 63.

Wepe, *v.* weep, xi. 12. wepeand, *pres. p.* viii. 60.

Were, *s.* doubt, perplexity, A ii. 56, 79, iii. 95 (?).

Were, *s.* war, vi. 31, vii. 71, viii. 15, A ii. 27, &c.

Were, *v.* make war, i. 12, iii. 95 (?); 2 *pr. subj. s.* x. 21.

Weremen, *pl.* warriors, x. 9 (MS. *werkmen*).

Werldes, *gen. s.* world's, viii. 16.

Werldly, *adj.* worldly, iii. 18.

Wery, *v.* curse, ii. 23. weried, *pp.* accursed, A ii. 214. OE. *wiergan*.

Wery, *adj.* weary, iii. 106.

Wex, *pt. s.* grew, iv. 48; *pt. pl.* iii. 106.

Wham, *pron.* whom, xi. 4.

Whare, *adv.* where, ii. 7, iii. 34, 75, &c.

Whete, *s.* wheat, i. 20.

Whi, *adv.* why, vi. 22.

Whider, *adv.* whither, ii. 21.

While, *s.* time, i. 82, ii. 5, vii. 137.

Whilk, *adj.* which, iii. 46.

Whils, *adv.* while, iii. 112, ix. 12, 62.

Whilum, *adv.* formerly, viii. 5.

Whore, *adv.* where, ix. 19.

Whote, see Wit.

Wide, *adv.* widely, i. 37, vi. 10, viii. 29, x. 9.

Wight, *adj.* active, stout, iv. 87, viii. 5, ix. 37, x. 2, 13, 15.

Wikked, *adj.* wicked, xi. 6; difficult, xi. 8; fierce, A ii. 116.

Wild, *adj.* savage, i. 60. wilde, stormy, v. 30.

Will, 1 *pr. s.* will, xi. 7. wiltou, 2 *pr. s.* wilt thou, ii. 21. will, *pr. pl. i.* 37. wald, *pt. s. subj. v.* 4. walld, *pt. s.* iv. 56. wald, 1 *pt. s.* v. 5; 2 *pt. pl.* viii. 12; *pt. pl.* ix. 31.

Win, *v.* capture, xi. 8. wan, *pt. s.* won, viii. 56, xi. T. 1; arrived, vii. T. 1; *pt. pl.* won, viii. 96, ix. 33. won, *pp.* v. 72, viii. 95. wun, vii. 151. wonen,

vii. 71, xi. 30. wcnnen, v. 36, viii. 16.

Wirk, *v.* contrive, viii. 20.

Wirschip, *s.* honour, credit, ix. 32, 33.

Wise, *s.* manner, iii. 47, viii. 95.

Wit, *v.* inform, v. 20. witten, *v.* know, ascertain, vii. 4. waite, 1 *pr. s.* know, A ii. 98. whote, 2 *pr. s.* xi. 4. wote, 1 *pr. pl.* xi. 8. wist, 1 *pt. s. subj.* knew, x. 1; *pt. pl.* iii. 52, iv. 44.

With, *prep.* against, ii. 6; among, iii. 69; by, iii. 64. wit, with, iv. 32.

Withouten, *prep.* without, vii. 47, 138. withowten, iii. 4, 100, iv. 35, xi. 15.

Wo, *s.* sorrow, misfortune, iii. 52, v. 11, &c.

Wode, *adj.* mad, vi. 73. OE. *wōd*.

Won, see Win.

Won, *v.* dwell, ii. 23. wone, A ii. 25. wonand, *pres. p.* vi. 74. OE. *wunian*.

Wonde, see Wend.

Wonder, *adv.* strangely, i. 74.

Wone, *s.* plenty, abundance, iv. 37. wane, iii. 93. OWScand. *vǫn*, chance. See Zupitza, Guy of Warwick, 10329, note.

Woning, *s.* dwelling, iv. 2, xi. 8.

Won, Wonen, Wonnen, see Win.

Wonyngstedes, *pl.* places of abode, A ii. 45. OE. *stede*.

Word, *s.* fame, rumour, x. 9. wordes, *pl.* words, i. 28, 45, &c.

Worth, *pr. s. subj.* become, be, ii. 11. wurth, ii. 5, 17, 29, 35. OE. *weorþan*.

Worthli, *adj.* worthy, v. 38. worthly, x. 2.

Wote, see Wit.

Woundes, *pl.* wounds, i. 91.

Wrath, see Wroth.

Wreke, 2 *pr. s. subj.* avenge, xi. 6. wroken, *pp.* ii. 4. wrokin, ii. 5.

Wretche, *s.* wretch, outcast, ii.
21, 23. wreches, *pl.* v. 36.
wretches, v. 57.

Wreten, *pp.* written, vii. 3.

Wroght, *pt.* *s.* wrought, i. 45; *pt.*
pl. vii. 62; *pp.* iii. 120, vi. 31.

Wroken, Wrokin, see Wreke.

Wrote, *v.* root up, vi. 32, 33.
OE. *wrōtan*.

Wroth, *adj.* angry, iii. 5, 42, xi.
12. wrath, vii. 14.

Wurth, see Worth.

Wurth, *adj.* worth, i. 24.

Wurthi, *adj.* worthy, v. 77.

Y.

ȝate, *s.* gate, vii. 49, viii. 89.

ȝeme, *v.* guard, keep, A ii. 205,
210. ȝemid, *pp.* A ii. 211.
OE. *ġēman*.

ȝemer, *s.* keeper, A ii. 213. Comp.
OWScand. *geymari*.

ȝere, see To-ȝere; *pl.* iii. 110.

ȝern, *adv.* eagerly, A ii. 122. OE.
georn.

ȝit, *adv.* yet, still, i. 49, ii. 6, iii.
99, &c.

ȝolden, *pp.* given up, yielded, viii.
89.

ȝong, *pl.* young people, iii. 19.

ȝow, *pron.* you, i. T. 1, ii. T. 1,
10, &c.; for you, vi. 1.

ȝowre, *adj.* your, ii. 7, vi. 4.

Yren, *s.* iron, iii. 102.

Yt, *pron.* it, iii. 10.

INDEX OF NAMES

- Abirdene, ii. 1.
 Abuyle, vii. 134.
 Aile, Iohn of, v. 63.
 Andwerp, iii. 34.
 Angus, A iv. 167.
 Armouth, iii. 76.
 Artayse, vii. 147.
 Arwell, v. 20.
 Aukland, A iv. 68.
 Badding, Iohn, v. 59.
 Baliolfe, Edward þe, ix. 2.
 Banocburn, ii. T. 2; Bannok burn,
 ii. 2.
 Barbenoire, note on, x. 19.
 Bauere, Lowis of, iii. 13.
 Beme, the King of, iv. 67, vii. 107.
 Bertram, A iv. 155.
 Berwik opon Twede, i. 56; Ber-
 wik, ii. 1, 35; Berwike, A i. 33.
 Beure parke, A iv. 63.
 Blankebergh, v. 27.
 Braband, þe duke of, iii. 25, iv.
 22; a Braban, vi. 62.
 Braband, iii. T. 1, 12, 38, iv. 2, 13.
 Bretayne, x. 25.
 Brug, ii. 22; Bruge, v. 15; Bruges,
 v. 19; Burghes, ii. 25.
 Bruse, David þe, ix. 1, 9, 34, 35;
 Dauyd le Bruys, A iii. 1; Ro-
 bert, id. 59.
 Cagent, v. 64.
 Calais, vii. 168, viii. T. 1, 59, 91,
 95; Calays, vii. 172, viii. 1, 42,
 53.
 Cane, vii. 47, 68.
 Carlele, ix. 31.
 Charters, Thomas, A iv. 189.
 Comyn, Sir Ion þe, i. 77.
 Coupland, Iohn of, ix. 37, A iv.
 212.
 Cressy, vii. 78, 102, 134.
 Cristofer, iii. 75; Cristofir, v. 74.
 Cuthbert of Dorem, ix. 63.
 Doncaster, Iohn of, xi. 13.
 Donde, i. 66, ii. 24.
 Dorem, ix. 31; Dureme, A iii. 27.
 Dowglas, William þe, ix. 42, A iv.
 33.
 Duche, iii. 20.
 Eurwick, A ii. 43.
 Flandres, i. 68, iii. 6; Flandres
 syde, iii. 74, v. 8, 10.
 fflemangrye, iv. 74.
 France, i. 68, &c.
 France, Iohn of, vii. 23, 51, 60,
 76, vi. 6, &c.
 Franceis, vii. 133.
 Gaunston, A ii. 142.
 Geneuayse, vii. 142.
 Glowceter, Erle of, v. 53.
 Gines, xi. 14, 28; Gynes, xi. T. 2,
 7, 26.
 Halidon Hyll, i. T. 2; Halydon
 hill, i. 58; Halidown hille, A i.
 31; Halidoune hille, id. 46.
 Hampton, iii. 59.
 Henueres, A ii. 134.
 Hogges, vii. T. 1, 39.
 Ierusalem, A ii. 165.
 Ipyre, v. 19.

- Klinton, Sir Wiliam of, v. 47.
 Knaresmire, A ii. 140.
 Kyret, Sir Hugh, v. 8.

 Lankaster, þe duc of, v. 41.
 Ledel, A iv. 19, 37.
 Londen, toure of, ix. 40, 52.
 Loundres, A iii. 72.

 Mawnay, Sir Walter þe, v. 39.
 Merington, A iv. 74.
 Merlin, vii. 2, 6, 7, A ii. 9.
 Minot, v. 1; Laurence, vii. 20.
 Morauia, Comes de, A iv. 193.
 Morlay, Sir Robard out of, v. 32.
 Morre, þe Erle, i. 42.
 Moubray, A iii. 23, A iv. 177.

 Nauerne, iv. 70.
 Neuell, A iv. 89.
 Neuil Cross, ix. T. 2, 28, A iii. 27.
 Norhamton, þe Erle of, v. 37.
 Normandes, v. 18, 23, 34; Normondes, v. 9. 28.
 Normondye, i. 18. Normundy, vii. 72.

 Okyll, A iv. 178.
 Onse, A ii. 106.

 Pariss, iii. 45.
 Percy, A iii. 23, A iv. 96.

 Saint Iohnes toune, ii. 7.
 Saint Omers, xi. 31.
 Seland syde, iii. 74.
 Sluse, v. 17. Sluys, v. 63.
 Spaniardes, x. T. 2.
 Striflin, ii. 13.
 Swin, v. 12, 22, 33. x. 7.

 Tems, A ii. 248.
 Tournay, vi. T. 2; Towrenay, vi. 1; Turnay, vi. 54.
 Trent, ix. 22.
 Twede, ix. 22, A i. 38.

 Valas, Filip, i. 69, &c.; Philippe de Valoys, A iii. 2.
 Viene, Iohn de, viii. 82.

 Westminster hall, ix. 11.

 3ork, þe ersbisschop of, ix. 29, A iii. 21.

WORDS EXPLAINED IN THE NOTES

All if, i. 85.
ay whils, i. 28.
Berebag, ii. 20.
Cog, iii. 79.
Dare, i. 9.
distance, ix. 1.
dray, viii. 34.
droupe and dare, i. 9.
dwell, ix. 8.
Fode, vi. 71.
frankis fare, vi. 20.
Gale, vi. 66.
galiot, iii. 79.
galley, iii. 79.
get, ii. 36.
Hende, vi. 17.
hendy, vi. 17.
hurdis, x. 14.
Mend, i. 29.
Pavesade, x. 14.

pelers, ii. 15.
prese, vii. 45.
prise, iv. 26.
Raw, iv. 79.
rent, vi. 13.
riving, ii. 19.
romance, vii. 1.
rughfute, ii. 19.
Soght, vii. 65.
sowed, v. 12.
syde, iii. 74.
Taret, iii. 79.
timber, vi. 1.
Vnder, ii. 18.
Wait, i. 64.
wall, v. 77.
waniand, ix. 25.
wede, v. 38.
were, vi. 31.
with, ii. 6.

THE END

OXFORD: HORACE HART M.A.
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY



f Lawrence Minot

Minot, L.

The poems of Lawrence Minot

PR
2085
.M5
1914

PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE
OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
59 QUEEN'S PARK
TORONTO 5, CANADA

